A GRAMMAR
OF
SPOKEN JAPANESE

BY

YAHEI MATSUMIYA
Dean of the Language Department,
School of Japanese Language and Culture

SCHOOL OF
JAPANESE LANGUAGE AND CULTURE
Kanda, Tokyo, Japan

SOLE AGENT
KYO BUN KWAN
(Christian Literature Society of Japan)
No. 2, 4-chome, Ginza,
Tokyo, Japan

1935

A GRAMMAR
OF
SPOKEN JAPANESE

FOREWORD

The publication of this "Grammar of Spoken Japanese" is an important educational experiment. So far as the writer is aware, this is the first attempt to produce a book which interprets the Japanese language to foreigners from the Japanese point of view. Although the Japanese grammatical terms are here translated into English, it will be seen that there is little attempt to view the Japanese language through the grammatical terms and concepts of any European language. The earlier the student recognizes this as a Japanese guide into a more ready and natural use of the language the greater will be the gain. Here lies the educational value of a careful study and use of the book.

Perhaps no person has a better right than Mr. Yahei Matsumiya to speak on the question of how foreigners may best approach and continue the study of the Japanese language. This book represents not theory, but years of experience in teaching the Japanese language to foreigners of varied ages and nationalities. This experience has not been limited to teaching beginners, which has been done by the direct method, and not by translation and the study of grammatical rules. The author's standing and authority as a language teacher have brought to him students in all degrees of advancement(and decline!). This has enabled him to test thoroughly the methods by which the determined language student may most hopefully continue his language work. The present writer gladly bears personal witness to the value of this "Grammar of Spoken Japanese" as he has carefully studied it in manuscript form.

Gilbert Bowles,
Acting Director,
School of Japanese Language
and Culture.

AUTHOR'S PREFACE

This "Grammar of Spoken Japanese" is intended mainly for Third Year foreign students in the School of Japanese Language and Culture. It consists largely of revised lectures given by the author to advanced students in the Course on Japanese Colloquial Grammar.

Conversational Grammar treats systematically of the use of words, their mutual relations and their positions as combined into sentences. In its complete form this appears to be difficult for foreign students. Therefore in this book the author has tried, as far as possible, to avoid involved explanations and technical words. Instead, he has used the educational method of giving as many examples as possible.

Some people wish to study grammar before beginning to learn to talk. That seems to the author a wrong idea. Long experience as a teacher of the Japanese language has taught him that even though a student be familiar with grammar he is not necessarily free in conversation. On the contrary, he is often unable to talk freely, because his knowledge of grammar puts restrictions on his speech. In order to profit from the study of this book the student should first gain more or less freedom in Japanese conversation.

In translating the Japanese sentences used as examples it will be seen that there is no attempt to give all possible meanings. For instance, the sentence, "**Asanebō bakari shite iru mono desu kara, itsumo gakkō ni okuremasu,**" is translated, "As I sleep late every morning, I am always late to school" (p. 10). Of course the sentence may mean, "As he sleeps late every morning", etc. In some cases the alternate translation is suggested in brackets (as he, we or they), but usually one form only is given, as it is recognized that language students who are prepared to use the book profitably will readily understand these various possible meanings.

The grammatical terms used in this book are, as far as possible, given in Japanese with English translations. To the point of weariness, as it may seem, the Japanese names of parts of speech and approximate English equivalents have

been repeated, simply for the sake of impressing the meaning and the "feel" of the Japanese words upon the memory.

One special rule adopted for the use of capital letters was wholly arbitrary, viz., that the names of parts of speech, both in Japanese and in English translation, should be capitalized. This was for the sake of holding attention upon the subject under immediate discussion. As a rule the Romanization of Japanese words has been according to the Hepburn system. Regarding the use of hyphens in the Romanization of Japanese, special attention is called to the following points:

1. To distinguish between **Dōshi**, Verbs, and the related **Jodōshi**, Auxiliary Verbs, they are connected by hyphens. Ex. **Ari-masen, yomi-mashita** and **ki-mashō.** (For Auxiliary Verbs see Chap. IX).

2. When **Te-ni-o-ha**, or **Joshi**, Postpositions, are connected with Nondeclinable Words (Nouns, Pronouns, Numerical Words), no hyphen is used. Ex. **Anata ni age-mashita; Hito-tsu dake ari-masu.** When they are connected with Declinable Words (Adjectives and Verbs), hyphens are used. Ex. **Muzu-kashiku-temo itashi-masu; ji wo kai-te i-masu.**

3. **Sūshi**, Numerical Words, and **Josūshi**, Auxiliary Numerical Words (see Chap. VI) are connected with hyphens. Ex. **Empitsu ga ni-hon ari-masu; Hon wo san-satsu kudasai.**

4. **Settōgo**, Prefixes, and **Setsubigo**, Suffixes, are connected by hyphens. Ex. **su-gao; fuka-mi.**

5. As to what Japanese compound words should be printed with hyphens, Saito's "Japanese-English Dictionary" was taken as the standard. However, in chapters where particular compound words are under discussion, these standards are not observed.

To indicate a long vowel sound a line is placed above the vowel. Ex. **Ōsaka, nijū-bashi.** In speaking, it is very important to prolong the vowels thus marked.

A double consonantal sound is expressed by repeating the letter, but when the double consonantal sound unites two words a hyphen is put between the repeated letter. Ex. **Inu ga ip-piki i-masu; Chōmen wo kat-te ki-mashita.**

The above principles govern the general use of Roman letters and hyphens; but when it is necessary to distinguish the parts of speech under discussion, hyphens are used between word-stems and the parts inflected. In the chapters on **Keiyōshi**, Adjectives, and **Dōshi**, Verbs, hyphens are used to indicate inflection. However, hyphens are not used in the original, conclusive verb-form, neither are they used to indicate the inflection of Adjectives and Verbs, except in the chapters treating of Adjectives and Verbs.

It is believed that the printing of all Japanese words and sentences in heavy type will prove convenient for quick reference and valuable for educational purposes.

This book is intended for advanced students of conversational Japanese. Students should not attempt to learn conversational Japanese itself from this book; its proper use will be for study by those who have already gained some knowledge of Japanese.

The author wishes to acknowledge the invaluable help given by the **Kokusai Bunka Shinko-Kai**, the Society for International Cultural Relations, in connection with the publication of this book. He also wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness to Dr. Gilbert Bowles, Acting Director of the School of Japanese Language and Culture, also to Dr. G. W. Bouldin, and to Mr. and Mrs. Kazuya Matsumiya, who have given much time to the translation of the Japanese manuscript of the book into English. They have also given valuable advice as to how to make the book of greatest use to foreign students of Japanese.

Yahei Matsumiya.

Tokyo,
May 31st, 1935.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

				Page
	Author's Preface			
I.	**Bun**	文	Sentences	3
II.	**Kotoba**	言葉	Words	5
III.	**Hinshi**	品詞	Parts of Speech	7
IV.	**Meishi**	名詞	Nouns	9
V.	**Daimeishi**	代名詞	Pronouns	16
VI.	**Sūshi**	數詞	Numerical Words	21
VII.	**Keiyōshi**	形容詞	Adjectives	35
VIII.	**Dōshi**	動詞	Verbs	41
IX.	**Jodōshi**	助動詞	Auxiliary Verbs	67
X.	**Joshi (Tenioha)**	助詞	Postpositions	103
XI.	**Fukushi**	副詞	Adverbs	150
XII.	**Setsuzokushi**	接續詞	Conjunctions	153
XIII.	**Kanshi**	感詞	Interjections	156
XIV.	**Settōgo to Setsubigo**	接頭語ト接尾語	Prefixes and Suffixes	159
XV.	Construction of Sentences			168

Index
Glossary of Japanese Grammatical Terms.

A GRAMMAR OF SPOKEN JAPANESE

by

YAHEI MATSUMIYA

I. BUN (文)—SENTENCES

1. In daily conversation definite ideas and emotions are expressed in words, few or many. Public speeches and addresses are also composed in the same way. The verbal expression of a definite idea or emotion is called a **bun**, sentence.

2. When we examine the formation of sentences, we find that they consist of different kinds of words arranged according to definite rules.

3. Take for instance, such a simple sentence as **Ame ga furi-masu,** It rains. If one analyzes this sentence, its Subject is **ame.** To this **ame,** the word **ga** is connected and together they form the main part of the sentence. **Furi-masu** explains the action of the Subject **ame.** This sentence is then composed of two parts as follows:

A. **Ame ga**
B. **furi-masu.**

The first part is called **Shubu** (主部), Subject, and the second part **Jutsubu** (述部), Predicate. In order to make a sentence these two parts, expressed or implied, are always necessary.

4. If one goes further and analyzes the Subject **Ame ga**

and the Predicate **furi-masu,** the former is made up of **ame** and **ga**, and the latter of **furi** and **masu**. Then the sentence, **Ame ga furi-masu**, can be divided into two main parts, **Shubu** and **Jutsubu**, and can also be divided into four words, **ame, ga, furi** and **masu.** (In this Grammar Auxiliary Verbs are treated as separate words, though for convenience in reading they are connected with the verb-stems by hyphens.) These four words are the elements in this sentence. They are connected under definite rules in order to express a definite idea.

II. **KOTOBA** (言葉)—WORDS

1. The words which compose the sentence are simply connected syllables. The word **ame** consists of **a** and **me**, and the word **furi** of **fu** and **ri**. It is the same with other words. Of course the number of syllables in words varies. For instance, the words **me**, eye, **te**, hand, **ki**, tree, and **ha**, leaf or tooth, have only one syllable each, while the words **tsukue**, desk, **monosashi**, foot-ruler, **atarashii**, new, and **utsukushii**, beautiful, consist of several syllables each.

2. However, each word in this sentence has its own characteristics and no two can be treated in the same manner. For instance, in the sentence **Ame ga furi-masu**, the words **ame** and **furi** have distinct meanings; each can be interpreted as such and such a thing or action. On the other hand the words **ga**, which follows **ame**, and **masu**, placed after **furi**, have no independent meaning in themselves; they only help through connection with the other words to complete the meaning of the sentence. There are thus two different kinds of words which make up sentences, namely, the words which have meaning and those which, though having no independent meaning, assist in completing the meaning of the other words.

3. These two groups of words, those which have independent meaning and those which have not, are further divided into two kinds. The word **ame** in the first group is always **ame**, but the word **furi** is inflected, as **fu-ri-(masu)**, **fu-ra-(nai)**, **fu-ru-(to)** and **fu-re-(ba)**. There are thus two kinds of words, namely, those which are inflected and those which are not.

4. Next, if we examine the second group, those which have no independent meaning, the word **ga** in **Ame ga furi-masu** never changes, while the word **masu** in **furi-masu**

changes into **mashita, masen,** and **mashō**. There are thus two kinds of words in this group also.

5. In classifying these words which have independent meaning we call those which have no inflection, **Taigen**, non-declinable parts of speech, and those which have inflection, **Yōgen**, declinable parts of speech. Words which have no independent meaning are classified as **Joshi** or **Tenioha**, Post-positions, and **Jodōshi,** Auxiliary Verbs, which have inflection. These two latter groups, **Joshi** and **Jodōshi** are together called **Joji**, Auxiliary Words.

6. The above rules concerning the classification of words, when applied to the sentence, **Ame ga furi-masu,** are shown in the following diagram:

Sentence
- Subject
  - **Ame**—has meaning, but no inflection.
  - **ga** —has no independent meaning and no inflection.
- Predicate
  - **furi** —has meaning and inflection.
  - **masu**—has no independent meaning but has inflection.

III. **HINSHI** (品詞)—PARTS OF SPEECH

1. In daily conversation the words used as **Taigen** (体言), which form the main parts of the Subjects of sentences, are mostly such words as **ame**, rain, **kaze**, wind, **hon**, book, and **empitsu**, pencil. But in addition to these, one often uses such words as **anata**, you, and **watakushi**, I. They are also **Taigen**, but are different from the first kind. Numerical Words are also used in the subjective parts of sentences. Therefore, the **Taigen** must be divided into three classes:

A. **Meishi** (名詞), Nouns—Names of material and immaterial things.

B. **Daimeishi** (代名詞), Pronouns—Words used instead of Nouns.

C. **Sūshi** (數詞), Numerical Words—Words expressing number, amount and order.

2. The **Yōgen** (用言), Declinable Words, form the main parts of the Predicates of sentences. They are divided into two classes:

A. **Dōshi** (動詞), Verbs—Words denoting action, being or state.

B. **Keiyōshi** (形容詞), Adjectives—Words denoting nature, form, emotion, etc.

3. As has been explained before, the **Joji** (助辞), Auxiliary Words, which are essential to sentence formation, but have no independent meaning, are divided into **Joshi** (助詞) or **Tenioha**, Postpositions, and **Jodōshi** (助動詞), Auxiliary Verbs.

4. There are three more kinds of words used in conversation. An example of the first kind is **chottc,** as in **Chotto oidekudasai**, Please come here for a minute. These are called **Fukushi** (副詞), Adverbs.

5. An example of the second is **sōshite,** as in the ex-

pression **Kyōto to sōshite Ōsaka,** Kyōto and also Ōsaka. These are called **Setsuzokushi** (接續詞), Conjunctions.

6. An example of the third class is **Aa**, as in **Aa utsukushii desu ne**! Oh, how beautiful! These are called **Kanshi** (感詞), Interjections.

7. There are then the following ten kinds of words used in forming sentences:

Meishi	名詞	Nouns	**Taigen** 体言
Daimeishi	代名詞	Pronouns	
Sūshi	數詞	Numerical Words	
Keiyōshi	形容詞	Adjectives	**Yōgen** 用言
Dōshi	動詞	Verbs	
Jodōshi	助動詞	Auxiliary Verbs	**Joji** 助辞
Joshi or **Tenioha**	助詞	Postpositions	
Fukushi	副詞	Adverbs	
Setsuzokushi	接續詞	Conjunctions	
Kanshi	感詞	Interjections.	

These are called **Hinshi,** Parts of Speech, and together are usually called **Jū-Hinshi** (十品詞), the Ten Parts of Speech.

IV. MEISHI (名詞)—NOUNS

1. Nouns are names of persons, places, things, actions, qualities etc., and may be grouped as: (a) names of common objects, such as **hito**, man, **yama**, mountain, **kawa**, river, **ie**, house, **hashi**, bridge, **tori**, bird, **kedamono**, animal, **kōen**, park, and **teishaba**, station; (b) proper names, such as **Tōkyō**, **Ōsaka**, **Fuji-san**, **Tone-gawa**, **Iyeyasu Tokugawa**; (c) words expressing actions, such as **undō**, exercise, **sampo**, taking a walk, **fumpatsu**, strenuous exertion, and **benkyō**, study; (d) words expressing condition, nature or emotion, such as **rippa**, splendor, **kengo**, firmness, **hirosa**, width, **semasa**, narrowness, **makka**, crimson, **makkuro**, jet black, **kurushimi**, agony, **yorokobi**, gladness, **nigiyaka**, gaiety and **shizuka**, calmness; (e) words expressing abstract qualities, such as **kenshiki**, pride, **shisō**, thought, and **shinsetsu**, kindness.

2. Nouns belong to the **Taigen** class (meaning, but no inflection) and constitute the main part of the sentence. They are also used to supplement the meaning of other words in the sentence.

3. Nouns have a great variety of uses, and the number is very large. They may be divided into the following classes: (a) Nouns original in form and nature; (b) those derived from other parts of speech, or with the same roots as the related Verbs or Adjectives; (c) those formed by combining other words; (d) those formed by repetition of the same word; (e) and those derived from foreign words.

4. Examples of Nouns original in form and nature:

heya, room.	**fude**, writing brush.
hon, book.	**mado**, window.
inu, dog.	**neko**, cat.
suzume, sparrow.	**hato**, pigeon.
kasa, umbrella.	**geta**, wooden clog.

kami, paper.	**tsukue**, table.
momo, peach.	**kuri**, chestnut.
uma, horse.	**ushi**, cow or ox.
ta, rice field.	**hatake**, field.
ame, rain.	**abura**, oil.

5. Examples of Nouns with the same roots as the related Verbs and Adjectives:

Sankan no tanigawa no nagare wa yohodo kyū desu. The current of mountain rivers is very rapid.

Kōri no yō ni tsumetai. It is cold as ice.

Nanjira wa yo no hikari de aru. You are the light of the world.

In these sentences **nagare**, in **tanigawa no nagare**, is related to the Verb **nagareru; kōri** in **kōri no yō ni**, is related to the Verb, **kōru**; and **hikari** in **yo no hikari**, to the Verb **hikaru.**

Ano empitsu no iro wa aka desu. The color of that pencil is red.

Shiro demo, kuro demo, yoroshii no wo eran-de kudasai. Please select the one you like, either white or black.

In these sentences, **aka, shiro,** and **kuro** are related to the Adjectives **akai, shiroi,** and **kuroi.**

6. Examples of Nouns formed by Nouns with verb-stems attached:

Kanemochi ni nat-temo, aikawarazu kechi desu ne. Even when he has become rich he is as stingy as ever.

Asanebō bakari shi-te iru mono desu kara, itsumo gakkō ni okure-masu. As I sleep late every morning, I am always late to school.

Migawari ni nat-te o-kakure ni nari-mashita. He died in place of his friend.

In these sentences **kane-mochi**, rich man, is made up of two different words, **kane**, money and **mochi**, have; **asa-ne** is made of **asa**, morning, and **ne**, sleep; **mi-gawari** is made up of **mi**, body, and **kawari**, from **kawaru**, change or substitute. Each of these Nouns is made up of a Noun and a verb-stem. **Kutsu-naoshi**, shoe cobbler, **kuzukami-hiroi**, waste-paper picker, **undō-zuki**, lover of sports, **koshi-kake**, bench, and **kane-ire**, purse, are of the same kind.

7. In the following examples, Nouns are formed by Nouns preceded by verb-stems:

Iroiro mezurashii orimono ga chinretsu shi-te ari-mashita. Many rare textiles were on exhibition.

Ano hito wa mochigane wo nokorazu dashi-te binbōnin wo tasuke-mashita. That man helped the poor by giving all the money he had.

Harigami wo shi-te kabe no ana wo fusagi-mashō. Let us paste paper over this hole in the wall.

Ori-mono is made up of the verb-stem **ori**, weave, and the Noun **mono**, thing; **mochi-gane**, of the verb-stem **mochi**, have, and the Noun **kane**, money; **hari-gami**, of the verb-stem **hari**, paste, and the Noun **kami**, paper. **Some-gami**, colored paper, **kake-jiku**, scroll, **ki-mono**, clothes, **tsuke-himo**, attached string, and **kaeri-guruma**, returning car, are of the same kind.

8. Examples of Nouns formed by a combination of Nouns:

Sono hon wa hondana ni ire-te oi-te kudasai. Please put the books on the book shelves.

Gaitō wo kai-tai no desu ga, dōmo futokoroguai ga waru-ku-te.—I want to buy a new over coat but my funds are low.

Hon-dana consists of two Nouns, **hon**, book, and **tana**, shelf, and **futokoro-guai** of **futokoro**, pocket, and **guai**, condition. **Yubi-wa**, ring, **oyako-domburi**, bowl of chicken, egg and rice, **gyū-nabe**, beef chafing-dish stew, **cha-dansu**, cupboard, and **to-dana**, wardrobe, are similarly formed.

9. The following are examples of Nouns formed by combinations of Verbs: **Yomi-kaki**, reading and writing, from **yomi**, read, and **kaki**, write; **nomi-kui**, drinking and eating, from **nomi**, drink, and **kui**, eat; **oshi-ire**, closet, from **oshi**, push, and **ire**, put in; and **hiki-dashi**, drawer, from **hiku**, pull and **dashi**, put out.

Sekkaku no hanashi wo kikizute de wa komari-masu. Don't ignore such a good story.

Takioki no hiyameshi de wa taberu ki ni naran. I don't feel like eating left over cold-rice.

Denki wo tsukeppanashi wa sukoshi fukeizai da ne. It is wasteful to leave the light on.

Akekure kodomo no koto bakari omot-te i-masu. I am thinking about my child early and late.

In these examples, **kiki-zute** consists of **kiku**, hear, and **suteru,** throw away; **taki-oki,** of **taku,** cook, and **oku,** place; **akekure** of **akeru,** dawn and **kureru**, grow dark; and **tsukep-panashi** of **tsukeru**, light and **hanasu**, leave. These are all made up by combining two Verbs.

10. Examples of Nouns formed of Nouns followed by Adjectives:

Taisetsu-na dōgu desu kara, teara ni atsukawa-naide kudasai. As this is an important utensil (or tool), please do not handle it roughly.

Kibaya na yatsu de, hanashi wo hanbun kii-te mo okoru. He is so quick tempered that he gets mad without hearing more than half what others have to say.

Soko wa hashijika desu, dōzo kochira e. That is too near the entrance, please come in a little further.

In these sentences, **te-ara**, rough handling, consists of the Noun **te**, hand, and the Adjective **arai**, rough; **ki-baya** consists of **ki**, spirit, and **hayai**, quick; and **hashi-jika**, of the Noun **hashi,** edge, or extremity, and the Adjective **chikai,** near. In like manner **iji-waru**, an ill-tempered person, **ohito-yoshi**, good-natured man, **iro-jiro**, fair-skinned, are formed by adding to the Nouns, **iji,** temper, **ohito**, man and **iro**, color, the Adjectives, **warui,** bad, **yoshi,** good and **shiroi,** white.

11. Examples of Nouns formed by Nouns preceded by Adjectives:

Ame ga hareru to, aozora ga mie-te ki-mashita. The rain has stopped and the blue sky has appeared.

Tsuki no nai ame no yo wa kurayami desu. A rainy night without the moon is pitch dark.

Atsugami ni tsutsun-de nizukuri wo shi-te dashi-te kudasai. Please wrap it in thick paper and mail it.

In these sentences, **ao-zora,** blue sky, consists of the Adjec-

tive, **ao,** blue, and the Noun, **sora,** sky; **kura-yami,** pitch dark, of the Adjective **kurai,** dark, and the Noun **yami,** darkness; and **atsu-gami,** thick paper, of the Adjective **atsui,** thick, and the Noun **kami,** paper. Each of these Nouns consists of a Noun preceded by an Adjective. The words **ao-mono,** green vegetables, **ama-zake,** sweet wine, **usu-gōri,** thin ice, **aka-tombo,** red dragon-fly, **kuro-kami,** black hair, and **ureshi-namida,** tears of gladness, are also of this kind.

12. Examples of Nouns formed by combining Adjectives:

Nagamijika no nai yō ni soroe-te kit-te kudasai. Please cut them the same length.

Amari takahiku ga ari-masu kara, motto taira ni shi-te kudasai. There is too much difference in the height, please make them even.

Asoko no umi wa tōasa desu. That sea has a shoal of great width.

In these sentences, **naga-mijika,** length, consists of **nagai,** long and **mijikai,** short; **taka-hiku,** unevenness, consists of **takai,** high, and **hikui,** low; and **tō-asa,** shoal of great width, of **tōi,** distant, and **asai,** shallow. These are all combinations of Adjectives.

13. The following are examples of Nouns formed by combining Adjectives and Verbs:

Kuronuri no hako. Black lacquered box.

Sonna maniawase no shigoto de wa nagamochi wa itashimasen. Such patched up work cannot last long.

Aitsu wa mō Manshū e takatobi shi-ta deshō. That fellow must have absconded to Manchuria by this time.

In these examples, **kuro-nuri,** black lacquered ware, consists of the Adjective **kuroi,** black, and the verb-stem **nuri,** paint; **naga-mochi,** durability, consists of the Adjective **nagai,** long, and the verb-stem **mochi,** last long; and **taka-tobi,** abscond, of the Adjective **takai,** high, and the verb-stem **tobi,** fly. **Tō-nori,** long ride, and **chika-zuki,** acquaintance, also belong to this class of Nouns.

14. Nouns are also formed by the combination of Prefixes or Suffixes with other words. (On the broader use of Prefixes

and Suffixes see Chapter XIV.) For instance, **su-gao**, unpainted face, is made up of the Prefix **su**, natural, and the Noun **kao**, face; and **atsu-mi**, thickness, of the Adjective **atsui**, thick, and the Suffix **mi**.

15. Examples of Nouns formed by the combination of Prefixes with other words:

Nama-iki, impertinence, from **nama**, raw, and **iki**, spirit.

Ao-nisai, green boy, from **ao**, green, and **nisai**, two years of age.

Ki-ito, raw silk, from **ki**, raw, and **ito**, thread.

O-tegami, letter, from **O**, Honorific, and **tegami**, letter.

O-hanashi, story, from **O**, Honorific, and **hanashi**, story.

O-hagi, rice dumpling, from **O**, Honorific, and **hagi**, dumpling.

In the last three cases the Honorific **O** is indispensable in forming these Nouns.

16. The following are examples of Nouns formed by combining Suffixes with other words: **Tomo-dachi**, friend, from **tomo**, friend, and **tachi**, plural Suffix; **ko-domo**, child, from **ko**, child, and **domo**, plural Suffix; **atsu-mi**, thickness, from **atsui**, thick, and **mi**, contents; **taka-sa**, height, from **takai**, high, and **sa**, quality of; **mina-san**, ladies and gentlemen, from **mina**, all, and **san**, honorific word; **oku-sama**, madame, from **oku**, interior, and **sama**, honorific word.

17. Some plural Nouns are formed by the repetition of the singular form:

Kita no yamayama ni wa mō yuki ga furi-mashita. It has already snowed in the northern mountains.

Mezurashii mono wo shinajina chōdai itashi-mashi-te osoreiri-mashita. I am very pleased to receive so many rare and beautiful things.

Ieie ni kokki wo tate-mashita. Each house has put out a flag.

Shimajima no kage wo shiraho ga sugi-te iki-masu. The white sails are passing under the lee of many islands.

Kotogoto ni mendōkusai koto wo ii-masu ne. He says something troublesome every time anything occurs.

Yama-yama, mountains, **shina-jina**, things, **ie-ie**, houses, **shima-jima**, islands and **koto-goto**, every thing, belong to this class.

18. Examples of Nouns derived from foreign words:

Rampu, lamp; **garasu,** glass; **pen,** pen; **tonneru,** tunnel; **suteishon,** station; **paipu,** pipe; **baketsu**, bucket; **moga,** modern girl; **mobo,** modern boy.

V. DAIMEISHI (代名詞)—PRONOUNS

1. **Daimeishi,** Pronouns, are used instead of Nouns. In the following sentences, **kore**, this, **nani**, what, **asoko**, there, **anata**, you, **dochira**, where, **sore**, that, and **dore**, which, are Pronouns:

Kore wa nan desu ka? What is this?
Asoko no ki no eda ni kotori ga i-masu. There is a little bird on the branch of that tree.
Anata no o-taku wa dochira desu ka? Where is your house?
Sore ga watakushi no hon desu. That is my book.
Ikutsu mo ari-masu ga, dore ga yoroshii deshō? There are many, but which do you wish?

2. There are two kinds of Pronouns: **Jindaimeishi** (人代名詞), Personal Pronouns, used instead of personal names, and **Shishidaimeishi** (指示代名詞), Demonstrative (finger-pointing) Pronouns, used instead of the names of material and immaterial things, positions, or directions.

3. There are four kinds of **Jindaimeishi,** Personal Pronouns:

(i) **Jishō** (自稱) **Jindaimeishi,** Personal Pronouns of the first person, are used instead of one's own name.

Watakushi wa sakunen Ku-gatsu kochira e mairi-mashita. I came here in September of last year.
Sore wo watashi ni kudasai. Please give that to me.
Boku wa gakkō no kaeri ni tomodachi no uchi e yori-mashita. When returning from school, I stopped at my friend's house.
Watakushi, watashi and **boku** are **Jishō.**

(ii) **Taishō** (對稱) **Jindaimeishi,** Personal Pronouns of the second person, are used instead of the names of the persons addressed.

Anata wa myōban no ongakukai ni oide ni nari-masu ka? Are you going to the concert tomorrow night?

Kimi wa itsu gakkō kara kaeri-masu ka? When do you come back from school?

Okā-san ga o-mae ni age-ta hon ga ari-mashō? You have the book which mother has given you?

Anata, kimi and **omae** are **Taishō.**

(iii) **Tashō** (他稱) **Jindaimeishi**, Personal Pronouns of the third person, are used instead of the names of a person or persons spoken of.

Ano kata wa Rikkyō Daigaku no kyōju de, Satō-san to mōshi-masu. That man is Mr. Satō, a professor in St. Paul's University.

Jochū ga shōchi shi-te iru to omoi-masu kara, are ni kii-te mi-mashō. As the maid may know I shall ask her.

Sono koto wa Yoshida-san ni kike-ba, kono hito ga ichiban akarui desu. If you ask Mr. Yoshida, he is the man who knows best.

Ano kata, are and **kono hito** are **Tashō.**

Different **Tashō** are used to indicate the distance of the man or thing spoken of. For example, **kono hito**, this person, means one who is near by; **sono hito**, that person, one a little farther away, and **ano hito**, that man over there, one still farther away. **Ano kata**, that person over there, **sono kata**, that person, and **kono kata**, this person, or **sore**, that thing over there, **are**, that thing, and **kore**, this thing, are used in the same manner.

(iv) **Futeishō** (不定稱) **Jindaimeishi**, Indefinite and Interrogative, are used in place of unknown persons.

Sono gaitō to kaban wa donata no desu ka? Whose overcoat and bag are those?

Dare-ka mon no soto ni tat-te i-masu. Some one is standing outside the gate.

Donata, and **dareka**, are **Futeishō.**

4. The principal **Jindaimeishi**, Personal Pronouns, used in daily conversation are shown in the following table:

Jishō (自稱)	**Taishō** (對稱)	**Tashō** (他稱)	**Futeishō** (不定稱)
watakushi, I	**anata**, you	**kono kata**, this person	**donata**, who?
watashi, I	**kimi**, you	**sono kata**, that person	**dono kata**, who?
boku, I	**omae**, you	**ano kata**, that person	**dare**, who?
		kore, this	
		sore, that	
		are, that thing (farther away)	

5. The word **jibun**, self, emphatic and reflexive, is often used with all four of the **Jindaimeishi**. In polite speech the Honorific **go** is usually added to **jibun (go-jibun)**.

In the first person, **Jishō**:

Watakushi wa jibun de kaki-masu. I write it myself.

In the second person, **Taishō:**

Anata wa go-jibun de o-kaki-nasai. Please write it yourself.

In the third person, **Tashō**:

Ano kata wa jibun de kaki-mashita. He wrote it himself.

In the interrogative and indefinite, **Futeishō**:

Donata ga jibun de o-kaki ni nari-mashita ka? Who wrote it himself?

6. **Shishidaimeishi,** Demonstrative Pronouns, are divided into three kinds: those signifying places, those signifying things and those signifying direction. Each class is used to indicate the relative distance from the person speaking. The things or places or directions nearest to one are expressed by such words as **kore,** this, **koko,** here, and **kochi,** this side. These are called **Kinshō** (近稱). If the things, places or directions are comparatively distant from the person speaking, the words are called **Chūshō** (中稱). If the things, places or directions are far away from the speaker, the words are called **Enshō** (遠稱). If the distance is indefinite or in the form of a question, the words are called **Futeishō** (不定稱).

7. The following table shows these four forms of Demonstrative Pronouns:

	Kinshō (近稱)	**Chūshō** (中稱)	**Enshō** (遠稱)	**Futeishō** (不定稱)
Thing	**kono**	**sono**	**ano**	**dono** **dore**
Place	**kore**	**sore**	**are**	**izure** **nani**
Direction	**koko** **kochi**	**soko** **sochi**	**asoko** **achi**	**doko** **dochi**

8. There are other types of Demonstrative Pronouns of Direction. They are **konata (Kinshō)**, here; **sonata (Chūshō)**, there; **anata (Enshō)**, over there; **donata (Futeishō)**, which direction? However, these words are now generally used as Personal Pronouns. It has already been explained that **anata (Taishō)**, you, and **donata (Futeishō)**, who, also belong to this group.

9. **Konata**, here, a Demonstrative Pronoun, is used with the same meaning as **koko**, here.

Yamashita-san wa konata no go-kinjo desu ka? Is Mr. Yamashita's house near here?

Chotto ukagai-masu ga, konata wa Yamashita-san de irasshai-masu ka? Pardon me, is this Mr. Yamashita's residence?

Demonstrative Pronouns of Direction are often confused with those of place and position.

10. Plural forms of Pronouns are formed by adding, **domo, gata, tachi, ra,** etc. to the singular.

Watakushi-domo wa mainichi gakkō e iki-masu. We go to school every day.

Anata-gata wa itsu no fune de o-kuni e o-tachi ni nari-masu ka? On what boat are you sailing for your country?

Kimi-tachi ga o-kaeri ni nat-ta ato deshita. It was after you had returned.

Kore-ra no uchi de ichi-ban yasui no wo kai-mashō. I shall buy the cheapest of these.

11. **Ra** only is used with the Demonstrative Pronouns, as in such expressions as **sochira**, there; **kochira**, here; **achira**, over there and **dochira**, where. They are formed by adding **ra** to **sochi**, **kochi**, **achi**, **dochi**, to signify a wider range. In this manner, **koko**, **soko**, **asoko** and **doko**, Demonstrative Pronouns of Place, are also pluralized by adding **ra**. In this connection **ra**, which is added to Demonstrative Pronouns of Place and Direction, is more suitable to use, as it signifies a wider range than can be expressed by plurality.

12. **Ra** may be used with **kore**, this; **sore**, that; **are**, that; **dore**, what, and **nani**, what, which are Demonstrative Pronouns of Things, but may not be added to **kono**, **sono**, **ano**, and **dono**.

VI. SŪSHI (數詞)—NUMERICAL WORDS

1. **Sūshi**, Numerical Words, are divided into two classes, those which express number and amount, and those which express order.

2. Numerical Words are **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Words. Some say they are Nouns, and must be so classified, but as the nature of Numerical Words is quite different from ordinary Nouns a distinction should be made between the two.

3. The ten basic numbers are expressed by the characters: 一, 二, 三, 四, 五, 六, 七, 八, 九, 十. There are two ways of counting: the original Japanese way, **hito, futa, mi, yo, itsu, mu, nana, ya, koko,** and **tō**; the other is the adapted Chinese method, **ichi, ni, san, shi, go, roku, shichi, hachi, ku,** and **jū.** In the first way we can count only up to ten, but in the second, we express large numbers, as **jū-ichi**, eleven, **jū-ni**, twelve, and so on, up to **hyaku**, hundred, **sen**, thousand, **man**, ten thousand, and **oku**, hundred million.

4. Numerical Words are sometimes used alone, as **ichi, ni, san**, etc. but in most cases they are combined with other words, according to the condition and nature of the things to which they refer. These additional words are called **Josūshi** (助數詞), Auxiliary Numerical Words. In counting, we say, **hito-tsu, futa-tsu, mit-tsu, yot-tsu,** etc. The **tsu**, added at the end of each word is a **Josūshi.** In the following examples the underlined words are **Josūshi: Pen ni-hon,** two pens, **kami go-mai,** five sheets of paper, **tsukue san-kyaku,** three desks, **ie futa-mune,** two houses, **obi hito-suji,** one **obi.**

5. In the use of **Josūshi**, Numerical Words, there is a distinction between the original Japanese words and words of Chinese origin. Words of each group are combined only with their own kind, Japanese Auxiliary Numerical Words being

used with original Japanese words, while Chinese are used with words of Chinese origin. For instance, if one says **ip-pon**, both **ichi** and **hon** are Chinese words, while if one says **hito-moto**, both **hito** and **moto** are original Japanese words. One should not use such combinations as **ichi-moto** or **hito-hon**.

6. This rule applies to **hito-fude**—筆, one writing brush. If the first character be read in the Japanese way as **hito**, the next must be read **fude**; but if the first be read in the Chinese way, the second must also—thus **ichi-hitsu,** changed into **ippitsu** by the rule of **Ombin**, Euphony. The characters 三月 should be read either as **mi-tsuki**, three months, or **San-gatsu**, March, and 一通 as **hito-tōri,** once through, or **it-tsū,** one letter.

7. When one counts years, months and days, sometimes the Auxiliary Numerical Word **ka** is added to words of Chinese origin:

San-ka-nen hodo gaikoku ni it-te i-mashita. I have been (or was) abroad for about three years.

Shichi-ka-nichi, the seventh day (expression of Buddhist origin).

Kono hen ni wa kōban wa ik-ka-sho mo ari-masen. There isn't even one police-box in this vicinity.

Ano hito wa rok-ka-koku no kotoba ni tsūji-te i-masu. He is well acquainted with six different languages.

8. In the following, words of Chinese origin are used as **Josūshi**:

Hikōki ga san-dai ton-de i-masu. Three aeroplanes are flying.

Tamago ga rok-ko. Six eggs.

Chōmen ga go-satsu ari-masu. There are five notebooks.

Genkan ni geta ga ni-soku nui-de ari-masu. Two pairs of geta are in the entrance.

In the following, original Japanese **Josūshi** are used:

Hito-kumi no tsukue to isu. One set, of desk and chairs.

Futa-hari no chōchin. Two lanterns.

Mi-kakae mo aru ōkina ki. A tree so big that three men can barely reach around it.

9. In some cases, not only the form but also the meaning varies as original Japanese or Chinese words are used. The characters 一本 may, when referring to a tree, mean the same thing, whether pronounced **hito-moto** or **ip-pon**, as in, **ip-pon no takai ki**, a tall tree, or **hito-moto no ōkii ki**, one big tree; but in all other cases 一本 must always be pronounced **ip-pon**, for instance, **empitsu ip-pon**, one pencil, never **empitsu hito-moto.** Also in case of the characters 三月, if they be read as **mi-tsuki**, they mean three months, but if they be read as **San-gatsu** they mean the third month of the year, March. If the characters 一通 be read **hito-tōri**, the meaning is once through, while if they be read **it-tsū**, the meaning is one letter, or one written paper.

10. One exception to the above rule is the character for four. Correctly speaking the character 四 should be read as **shi** when it is connected with Chinese Auxiliary Numerical Words, but it is generally pronounced in the original Japanese as **yo**. For instance, in counting sheets of paper one sometimes says, **shi-mai**, but more often **yo-mai**, and in counting horses or cows the pronunciation may be either **shi-hiki** or **yon-hiki**. While in counting persons one always says **yo-nin** and never **shi-nin.** The characters 一人 may be read either as **ichi-nin**, one person, or **hito-ri**, and 二人 may be read **ni-nin**, two persons, or **futa-ri**. Other characters designating persons are pronounced as follows:

三人	**san-nin**	three persons
四人	**yo-nin**	four persons
五人	**go-nin**	five persons
六人	**roku-nin**	six persons
七人	**shichi-nin**	seven persons
八人	**hachi-nin**	eight persons
九人	**ku-nin**	nine persons
十人	**jū-nin**	ten persons
十一人	**jū-ichi-nin**	eleven persons
十四人	**jū-yo-nin**	fourteen persons
二十四人	**ni-jū-yo-nin**	twenty four persons

11. In the pronunciation of the character 四, four, the following forms are common: in counting years and days, one says **yo-nen**, four years; **jū-yo-nen**, fourteen years; **yok-ka**, four days; **jū-yok-ka**, fourteen days; **ni-jū-yok-ka**, twenty four days. However, in designating months one says, **Shi-gatsu**, April, never **Yo-gatsu**.

12. In counting money, one says **yo-yen** or **yon-yen**, four **yen**, and **yo-rin** or **yon-rin**, four **rin**, but in case of **sen**, **shi-sen**, four **sen**, or **yon-sen**, and not **yo-sen**. In the following cases **shi** for four is not used:

Yo-jō-han no heya. A four and a half mat room.

Hanshi wo yo-jō kudasai. Please give me four quire of Japanese paper.

Yama no itadaki made yo-ri ari-masu. It is four **ri** to the top of the mountain.

13. As has already been explained, when the character 四, four, is connected with Auxiliary Numerical Words, the pronunciation **yo** is more frequently used than **shi**, but sometimes **yon**, especially when used with Chinese words:

Satōya ga chōnai ni yon-ken ari-masu. There are four sugar stores in this town (or on this street).

Watakushi wa Kyōto ni yon-shū-kan i-mashita. I was in Kyōto for four weeks.

Empitsu wo yon-dāsu kat-te ki-mashita. I have bought four dozen pencils.

Genzai no dendōchi wa yon-jū-yon-ka-sho. At present there are forty-four evangelistic stations.

Yon-jū-yon-yen yon-jū-yon-sen yon-rin. Forty-four **yen**, forty-four **sen** and four **rin**.

14. In the same way **shichi**, seven, is pronounced **nana**, and **ku**, nine, as **kyū** in the following cases:

Hagaki nana-mai. Seven post cards.

Nana-peiji. Seven pages.

Hon nana-satsu. Seven books.

O-kyaku-sama wa kyū-nin desu. There are nine guests.

Kōjimachi kyū-chōme. **Kōjimachi**, ninth block.

Kyū-yen kyū-sen. Nine **yen** and nine **sen**.

15. In calling telephone numbers the common way is to say **yon**, four, **nana**, seven, and **kyū**, nine, because these pronunciations are clear and unmistakable:

Yon-sen nana-hyaku kyū-jū-yon-ban. Number 4794.
Kyū-hyaku nana-jū-yon-ban. Number 974.

16. In designating days one says **hatsu-ka**, the 20th day, instead of **nijū-nichi.**

17. Sometimes two things are counted in pairs as one:

Soku: **Hakimono is-soku.** One pair of foot-wear.
Kutsu is-soku. One pair of shoes.
Geta ni-soku. Two pairs of **geta.**
Tabi san-zoku. Three pairs of **tabi.**
Zen: **Hashi ichi-zen.** One pair of chopsticks.
Tsugai: **Shiyū hito-tsugai.** One pair, male and female.
Kamo hito-tsugai. One brace of ducks.
Tsui **Fude it-tsui.** One pair of writing brushes.
Hibachi it-tsui. One pair of braziers.

18. Sometimes more than two things are counted as one:

Chaku: **Yōfuku it-chaku.** One suit of foreign clothes.
Kumi: **Hito-kumi no kōcha ki.** One tea set.
Soroi: **O-katte-dōgu hito-soroi.** One set of kitchen utensils.

19. To convey the idea "both" we sometimes use **ryō** or **sō:**

Ryō **Ryō-shin wa kuni ni ori-masu.** Both my parents are in the home country.
Ryō-nin tomo mada gakkō kara kaeri-masen. Neither of the two has yet returned from school.
Ryō-hō kara te wo dashi-mashita. They both stretched out their hands.
Ryō-men ni kizu ga ari-masu. There are wounds on both sides.
Sō: **Sō-hō tomo yasuku wa ari-masen.** Neither of the two is cheap.

20. Fractional numbers are expressed as follows:

San-bun no ichi. One-third.
Go-bun no ichi. One-fifth.

Hyaku-bun no jū-roku. Sixteen-hundredths.
Sen-bun no nijū. Twenty-thousandths.
Yo-tsu wari hito-tsu. One-quarter.

21. We express ratios as follows:

Atama wo shichi-bu san-bu ni wake-te i-masu. He divides his hair as three is to seven.

Mōke ga are-ba shi-bu-roku ni wake-mashō. If there be any profit, let us divide it as four is to six.

Iie, go-bu go-bu ni shi-te kudasai. No, please divide it half and half.

Sakuban no atsumari ni wa mishinja ga ni-wari ijō mie-mashita. In last night's meeting more than twenty per-cent were non-Christians.

Han-bun wa Chōsen no rōdōsha deshita. Half were Korean labourers.

Mō han-tsuki mo shi-tara mattaku jōbu ni naru deshō. He will quite recover in half a month.

22. Percentage and interest are expressed as follows:

Kono shōbai de wa totemo san-wari wa mōkari-masen. It is impossible to make thirty percent profit in this business.

Ginkō no yokin wa risage wo shi-te san-bu go-rin ni nari-mashita. Bank interest on savings dropped to 3.5 per cent.

In computing interest, **bu** (分), per cent, is common, but sometimes **shu** (朱), one tenth of one per cent is used. **Ichi-wari** is 10%, thus **san-wari go-bu** is 35%.

23. In order to indicate times, or fold, the word **bai** is used:

Hito-tsubu no mugi ga haeide-te san-jū-bai, roku-jū-bai, hyaku-bai no mi wo musubi-masu. A grain of wheat springs up and yields thirty, sixty or a hundred fold.

San-zō-bai, three times (as many).
Go-sō-bai, five times (as many).
Jus-sō-bai, ten times (as many).

24. As the use of Auxiliary Numerical Words is based upon habit, it is hard to find definite rules. However, the following rules are commonly observed. As has already been explained, **tsu,** as in **hito-tsu, futa-tsu, mit-tsu, yot-tsu,** is commonly

used to designate both material and immaterial things. **Ko** is sometimes used instead of **tsu**:

Nimotsu ik-ko, baggage, one piece.
Momo jik-ko, ten peaches.
Ringo yon-ko, four apples.
Tamago hachi-ko, eight eggs.
Hako ik-ko, one box.

Ri or **nin** is used for persons:

Hito-ri, one person; **futa-ri,** two persons; **san-nin,** three persons, and **yo-nin,** four persons, etc.

Ka and **nichi** are used for days:

Ichi-nichi, one day; **futsu-ka,** two days; **mik-ka,** three days, and **yok-ka,** four days; **jū-ichi-nichi,** eleven days; **jū-go-nichi,** fifteen days, or the fifteenth day.

Hiki, changing into **piki** or **biki,** is used for animals:

Uma ip-piki, one horse; **neko go-hiki,** five cats; **inu san-biki,** three dogs.

Wa is used for birds:

Ichi-wa, one bird; **ni-wa,** two birds; **sam-ba,** three birds.

Tō is used for horses and cows:

It-tō, one cow; **ni-tō,** two cows (or horses).

Bi is used for fish:

San-bi, three fishes; **roku-bi,** six fishes; **shichi-bi,** seven fishes.

Mune, for houses (ridge-poles), but **ken** is also used for houses:

Nikaiya hito-mune, one two-storied house.
Hiraya hachi-ken, eight one-storied houses.
Ano hito-mune no nagaya wa san-gen (ken) ni nat-te i-masu. That long house is divided into three apartments.

Hon is used for long round things:

Empitsu san-bon, three pencils.
Hibashi ni-hon, two fire-tongs.
Kasa go-hon, five umbrellas.
Kiri ip-pon, one paulownia tree.
Akibin hachi-hon, eight empty bottles.
Ip-pon no kashi no ki ni eda ga yon-hon ari-mashita. There were four branches on one oak tree.

Suji is used for **obi**, sashes, and **tenugui**, towels:
Futa-suji, two, **mi-suji,** three.
Mai is used for flat and thin things:
Kami go-jū-mai, fifty sheets of paper.
Kitte shichi-mai, seven stamps.
Kippu ni-mai, two tickets.
Ichi-mai no shimbunshi, one newspaper sheet.
Furoshiki san-mai, three **furoshiki.**
Jō is used for bundles of paper or **nori,** seaweed:
Hanshi ichi-jō, one **jō** of **hanshi** (twenty sheets).
Minogami ichi-jō, one **jō** of **minogami** (Japanese writing paper of large size, contains forty eight sheets).
Yōshi ichi-jō, one **jō** of foreign paper (twelve sheets).
Nori ichi-jō, one **jō** of seaweed (ten sheets).
Taba, soku and **wa** are used for round bundles:
Maki ni-soku, two bundles of fire-wood.
Takitsuke ichi-wa, one bundle of kindling.
O-na rop-pa, six bundles of greens.
Wara itsu-taba, five bundles of straw.
Satsu is used for books:
Hon san-satsu, three books.
Chōmen kyū-satsu, nine notebooks.
Kan is used for scrolls and Japanese books:
Tokuhon san-kan, three readers.
Makimono ni-kan, two scrolls.
Peiji, page, is used for counting pages of books:
Go-hyaku-peiji mo aru ōkina hon, a large book with five hundred pages.
Ichi-mai wa ni-peiji desu, One sheet contains two pages.
Kyaku is used for furniture with legs:
Tsukue ni-kyaku, two desks.
Isu go-kyaku, five chairs.
Soku is used for a pair of foot wear of any kind:
Zōri san-zoku (soku), three pairs of **zōri.**
Kutsu is-soku, one pair of shoes.
Hyō is used for counting sacks:
Kome jip-pyō, ten sacks of rice.
Sumi ni-hyō, two sacks of charcoal.

Tsū is used for letters and written papers:
Shorui it-tsū, one written document.
Hon is also used for letters:
Kesa tegami ga go-hon mairi-mashita. I received five letters this morning.
Dai is used for vehicles:
Jidōsha wo ichi-dai yon-de kudasai. Please call me an automobile.
Sō and **seki** are used for ships:
Gyosen san-zō, three fishing boats.
Kisen is-sō, one steam boat.
Gunkan yon-seki, four battle-ships.
Ori is used for boxes of eggs or cakes:
Seiyōgashi hito-ori, one box of foreign cakes.
Ma and **shitsu** are used for rooms:
Nikai to shita to de jū-yo-ma ari-masu. There are fourteen rooms altogether, upstairs and down.
Kodomo no heya ni ni-shitsu tsukai-masu. We use two rooms for children.
Kabu is used for counting plants and flowers:
Inenae mi-kabu, three bunches of young rice-plants.
Dariya itsu-kabu, five dahlia bulbs.
Ajisai hito-kabu, one hydrangea bush.
Hai is used for containers, such as bowls, cups and boxes:
Mizu wo ip-pai kudasai. Please give me a glass of water.
Hako shichi-hai, seven boxfuls.
Zen is used for bowls on the dining table:
Gohan san-zen, three bowls of rice.
Zen is also used for pairs of chopsticks:
Ichi-zen, ni-zen.
Chō is used for **sumi,** Japanese ink-sticks, candles, oars, plows, sickles, cannons, guns, and **tōfu**, bean curd:
Sumi it-chō, one ink-stick.
Tōfu ni-chō, two cakes of bean curd.
Kasane (layer) is used for Japanese costumes:
Shikifuku hito-kasane, one set of ceremonial Japanese clothes.
Fuku is used for drugs, tobacco and Japanese green tea:

Sanyaku ni-fuku, two packets of medicinal powder.

Tabako wo ip-puku itashi-mashō. Let us have a smoke.

Hatsu is used to indicate shots from a gun, or shell:

Teppō no tama wo ni-hatsu kudasai. Please give me two shells.

Sokushahō san-patsu. Three shots from a rapid firing gun.

Sao is the **Josūshi** for chests of drawers:

Hito-sao, futa-sao.

Sara is used for counting plates of food:

Itsu-sara, five plates; **mu-sara,** six plates.

Fukuro is used for counting bags:

Hito-fukuro, futa-fukuro.

Kago is used for counting things in baskets:

Mi-kago, three baskets; **yo-kago,** four baskets.

Kuruma is used in counting loads in vehicles:

Kokono-kuruma, nine car loads; **to-kuruma,** ten car loads.

Narabi and **retsu** are used for things in rows, according to the containers or conditions:

Yo-narabi, four rows, or **yo-retsu, itsu-narabi,** or **go-retsu,** five rows.

25. In designating the order or rank of material and immaterial things, Auxiliary Numerical Words expressing rank are generally added to Numerical Words:

Kisha wa ni-tō de gozai-masu ka? Are you taking a second class car?

Seiseki ga waruku-te jū-ban ni nari-mashita. My school records were poor and I now rank tenth in my class.

In the above examples **tō** in **ni-tō** and **ban** in **jū-ban** are Numerical Words.

26. Sometimes Auxiliary Numerical Words, such as **dai,** indicating order or rank, precede Numerical Words:

Dai-ichi wa Tōkyō de dai-ni wa Ōsaka. The first is Tōkyō and the second Ōsaka.

27. Sometimes Auxiliary Numerical Words both precede and follow Numerical Words:

Dai-go-ban, number five.

Dai-san-gō no shitsu ni hairi-mashita. I have taken room

No. 3.

28. The word **me** is often added to Auxiliary Numerical Words to indicate order:

Futari-me no o-kata wa donata desu ka? Who is the second person?

Mit-tsu-me no ga ii to omoi-masu. I like the third one.

Kado kara rok-ken-me ga yōfukuya desu. The sixth house from the corner is the tailor shop.

Dai-shichi-ban-me, the seventh one.

When the word **me** is used, it is always added to the Auxiliary Numerical Word, and never to the number directly, thus, **shichi-ban-me,** not **shichi-me.**

29. Numerical Words are sometimes placed immediately after Nouns to indicate rank:

Fuji-san wa Nippon ichi no yama desu. Mount **Fuji** is the greatest mountain in Japan.

Mitsukoshi wa Tōyō ichi da to mōshi-masu. **Mitsukoshi** is said to be the finest store in the Orient.

30. In indicating the number of the year, month or day in order, the special ordinal, **dai,** is unnecessary: That is, one does not say **dai-Roku-Gatsu,** but **Roku-Gatsu.**

31. **Ichi, ni, san,** etc. are used to indicate quality or grade, but sometimes **jō,** higher, **chū,** middle, and **ge,** lower, are used instead of **ichi, ni, san,** as in **jō-tō,** first class, **chū-tō,** second class, and **katō,** third class. In indicating the results of examination, percentages are usually given, but sometimes grades are characterized as **kō, otsu, hei,** and **tei**; or **yū,** excellent, **ryō,** good and **retsu,** poor. A. B. C. and D are also used.

32. The order of children in a family is indicated by **chō-nan,** the first son, **ji-nan,** the second son, and **san-nan,** the third son, for boys, and **chō-jo,** the first daughter, **ji-jo,** the second daughter, and **san-jo,** the third daughter, for girls.

33. The Interrogative Numerical Words are **iku** and **nani.** To the first, the Auxiliary Numerical Words **tsu** and **ra** are added, becoming **Iku-tsu?** How many? and, **Iku-ra?** How

much? and to the second, **hodo** is added, becoming **Nani-hodo?** How much? which is sometimes abbreviated to **Nan-bo?**

34. If these indefinite and interrogative words be used with such Verbs as **ari-masu** or **aru**, together they express a question as to number, not price:

Ringo ga iku-tsu ari-masu ka?
Ringo ga iku-ra ari-masu ka? } How many apples are there?
Ringo ga nan-bo ari-masu ka?

These three sentences all mean the same thing.

35. The word **Iku-tsu**, How many? always indicates a question as to number, but **Iku-ra**, How much? and **Nan-bo**, How much?, are used to indicate questions as to number, quantity or weight. To the question, **Kono ringo wa nana-tsu de iku-ra,** or **Nan-bo ari-masuka?** How much do these seven apples weigh? one should reply either, **San-gin ari-masu,** Three pounds, or **Go-yaku-me ari-masu,** Five-hundred **me.**

36. Followed by **de** or **desu** the words **iku-tsu** and **nan-bo** are used in asking the price, or the amount of money.

Kono tamago wa iku-ra desu ka? How much are these eggs?

Sono bōshi wa nan-bo de gozai-masu ka? How much is that hat?

Both these forms are used in asking the price. The answers would be, **Hito-tsu go-sen de gozai-masu,** They are five-sen each, or **Hachi-yen de gozai-masu,** Eight yen. The word **iku-ra** is used all over the country, but **nanbo** is used chiefly in the **Kansai,** Southwestern District.

37. The words **iku** and **nani,** usually with the same meaning, express a question as to number when connected with Numerical Words, or when inserted between Numerical Words:

Empitsu ga iku-hon (or **nan-bon**) **ari-masu ka?** How many pencils are there?

Isu ga iku-kyaku (or **nan-kyaku**) **ari-masu ka?** How many chairs are there?

Iku-man (or **nan-man**) **tomo shire-nu chiisai uo ga oyoi-de i-mashita.** Countless tens of thousands of little fish were swimming about.

Iku-hyaku iku-jū iku-nin to hakkiri shirabe-te kudasai, or **Nan-byaku nan-jū nan-nin to hakkiri shirabe-te kudasai.** Please find out exactly how many people there are.

The Auxiliary Numerical Words **tsu** and **ra**, mentioned before, are added only to **iku**. Therefore one can say, **Iku-tsu,** How many and **Iku-ra,** How much? but not **Nani-tsu,** or **Nan-tsu.** The words **nani-ra** and **nan-ra** are used to express entirely different meanings.

38. Approximate numbers are expressed by such phrases as these:

Sakuban no atsumari ni-wa ni-jū-shi-go-nin oide ni nari-mashita. About twenty four or twenty five persons came to the meeting last night.

Go-roku-shūkan no tsumori de Manshū e mairi-masu. I am going to **Manchoukuo** for four or five weeks.

Tamago wa mada mit-tsu yot-tsu nokot-te iru to omoi-masu. I think there are still three or four eggs left.

Nyūin shi-te kara mō jū-ni-san-nichi ni nari-masu ne. This is already the twelfth or the thirteenth day since I entered the hospital.

39. However, in such sentences as the following, the idea of number is inclusive of both numbers:

Kono mae ni wa Shōwa go-roku-nen wo Nikkō e hisho ni mairi-mashita. In the fifth and sirth years of **Shōwa**, I went to **Nikkō** for the summer vacation.

Meiji san-jū-shichi-hachi-nen no sen-eki. The war of the thirty-seventh and thirty eighth years of **Meiji.**

The fifth and the sixth year in the former sentence, and the thirty-seventh and the thirty-eighth year in the latter are definite. In these sentences the word **nen**, year, is omitted after the first mentioned year.

40. In polite conversation the Honorivc **O** is prexed to the Numerical:

Oishiku mo gozai-masen ga o-hito-tsu meshi agat-te kuda-

sai. You may not find this tasty, but please try one.

O-jō-san (or **sama**) **wa o-iku-tsu de irasshai-masu ka?** How old is your daughter?

O-futari de o-dekake ni nari-mashita. They have both gone out.

In the last case **sama** or **san** may also be added after the number, as **o-futari-sama,** two persons, or **o-san-nin-san,** three persons.

VII. **KEIYŌSHI** (形容詞)—ADJECTIVES

1. The discussion of **Keiyōshi,** Adjectives, is very important in the explanatory part of conversational Japanese Grammar.

2. While Verbs express movement, or the changing condition of things, Adjectives express fixed, permanent conditions, such as, form, color, and emotion.

Kuroi neko ga i-masu. There is a black cat.

Marui ōkii hibachi ga ari-masu. There is a large round brazier.

Tetsu yori katai mono wa ari-masen. There is nothing harder than iron.

Shiken ga muzukashiku-te komari-mashita. The examination being difficult I was very much troubled.

Sakura no hana ga utsukushiku saki-mashita. The cherry blossoms have opened out beautifully.

Kono hon wo yomi-mashita ga nakanaka omoshirō gazai-mashita. I have read this book and found it very interesting.

In the above sentences, **kuroi, marui, ōkii, katai, muzukashii, utsukushii,** and **omoshiroi** are Adjectives. Like Verbs, Adjectives have stems and terminal syllables. In the sentence, **Akai hana ga utsukushiku saki-mashita,** Red flowers bloomed beautifully, there are two Adjectives, namely, **akai** and **utsukushiku.** In English Grammar **utsukushiku** would be called an Adverb, but in Japanese Grammar, adding **ku** to an Adjective, making it modify the Verb, does not change its nature as an Adjective. True Adverbs in Japanese are very rare. (See Chap. III, 4.

3. The basis of the classification of Adjectives may be seen from the above two Adjectives, **akai,** red, and **utsukushii,** beautiful, analyzed in the following diagram:

Adjective	Stem	Terminal Syllable
akai	**aka**	**i**
utsukushiki	**utsukushi**	**ku**

Adjective-stems may be divided into two classes:

Class I

Kuro, black; **shiro,** white; **naga,** long; **mijika,** short; **fuka,** deep; **asa,** shallow; **tō,** far; **chika,** near; **atataka,** warm; **atsu,** hot; **samu,** cold; **ōki,** large; **chiisa,** small; **taka,** high; **hiku,** low; **kata,** hard; **yawaraka,** soft; **hiro,** wide; **sema,** narrow; **tsuyo,** strong; **yowa,** weak; **ama,** sweet; **kara,** hot; **ita,** painful; **kura,** dark; **akaru,** light; **omoshiro,** interesting; **surudo,** sharp; **nibu,** dull.

Class II

atarashi, new; **utsukushi,** beautiful; **yoroshi,** good; **ureshi,** happy; **kanashi,** sorry; **kurushi,** painful; **sabishi,** lonesome; **kewashi,** steep; **mezurashi,** rare; **netamashi,** jealous; **suzushi,** cool; **hazukashi,** shy; **yasashi,** easy; **muzukashi,** difficult; **isogashi,** busy; **ōshi,** brave; **memeshi,** effeminate; **omoomoshi,** dignified; **imaimashi,** aggravating; **bakabakashi,** foolish; **tanomoshi,** dependable; **nozomashi,** desirable.

In the second group the stem always ends in **shi** and is inflected by adding **ku** or **i**; in the first group, the stem end varies but is also inflected by adding **ku** or **i.**

4. Adjectives are inflected by changing the final syllable. In the word **akai, aka** is the stem and **i** is the end syllable; in **utsukushiku, utsukushi** is the stem and **ku** is the end syllable. The syllables **i** and **ku** usually interchange into **ku** or **i.** In other words, **aka-i** becomes **aka-ku** and **utsukushi-ku** becomes **utsukushi-i.**

5. Another common method of inflection is the addition of **kere** to the stem. Thus, the inflection of Adjectives may be shown in the following three forms:

aka { **ku**, **i**, **kere** } **utsukushi** { **ku**, **i**, **kere** }

6. Adjectives are inflected by adding the syllable **ku** when the Adjective follows a word or phrase, or when it modifies the Verb, or when it is used as a Noun. **Ku** is called the first inflection. The terminal **i** is called the second inflection. It is used when an Adjective ends a sentence, or when it modifies a nondeclinable word, **Taigen**, or when it follows an Adverb. **Kere**, called the third inflection, is used to express the indefinite future or when there are two or more Adjectives.

7. Examples of the first inflection in **ku**:

(i) When the Adjective follows a word or phrase:

Ki wa taka-ku, yane wa hiku-i. The tree is high and the roof is low.

Satō wa ama-ku, shio wa kara-i. Sugar is sweet and salt is salty.

Shina mo yo-ku, nedan mo yasu-i. The quality is good, and the price is cheap.

Yama ga taka-ku-te kewashi-i. The mountain is high and steep.

Hiru sugi ni naru to, nemu-ku-te komari-masu. When it gets past noon I am troubled with drowsiness.

Se ga hiku-ku-te marude issunbōshi no yō desu. He is so short that he looks like a pygmy.

(ii) When the Adjective modifies the Verb:

Kesa haya-ku dekake-mashita. I started out early this morning.

Ha no iro wo aka-ku some-mashita. I dyed the leaves red.

Ano hon wa omoshiro-ku yomi-mashita. I read that book with keen interest.

(iii) When the Adjective is used as a Noun:

Kondo gakkō de chika-ku no yama e ensoku ni mairi-masu. This time the school will go on a picnic to the near by mountain.

Tō-ku no shinrui yori mo chika-ku no tanin, to iu koto ga ari-masu. There is a saying that close friends are nearer than distant relatives.

Oso-ku made o-jama itashi-mashita. I troubled you by staying late.

Adjectives of this kind cannot be used on all occasions.

8. Examples of the second inflection in **i**:

(i) When the Adjective ends the phrase:

Michi ga tō-i. It is very far.

Sakuban kara atama ga ita-i. I have had a headache since last night.

Mizo no fuchi wo aruku no wa abuna-i. It is dangerous to walk on the edge of the ditch.

(ii) When the Adjective modifies a Noun:

shiro-i kami to aka-i empitsu ga aru. There is white paper and a red pencil.

Mezurashi-i tori ya kemono ga i-mashita. There were rare birds and animals.

Atarashi-i bōshi wo kai-mashita. I bought a new hat.

Anata no kaban wa ōki-i no desu ka? Your bag, is it a large one?

(iii) When the Adjective follows the Suppositional and Demonstrative Auxiliary Verbs:

Yasu-i no wa hitotsu mo na-i deshō. There is none that is cheap.

Geta de it-te wa abuna-i deshō. It will be dangerous to go with **geta.**

Ano uchi wa yohodo sema-i rashii. That house seems very small.

9. Examples of the third inflection in **kere-(ba)**:

(i) When the Adjective refers to the indefinite future:

Samu-kere-ba sutōbu wo taki-mashō. If it gets cold, I shall light the fire in the stove.

Oso-kere-ba myōchō no koto ni itashi-masu. If it be too late, I shall do it tomorrow morning.

Amari taka-kere-ba, kau no wa miawase-nasai. If it be too expensive, better put off your purchase.

(ii) When there are two or more Adjectives modifying the same word:

Ki mo yasashi-kere-ba, shinsetsu demo aru. He is tender-hearted and kind.

Ano yama ni wa ki mo na-kere-ba, kusa mo nai. In that mountain there are neither trees nor grass.

10. The three types of inflection of Adjectives are shown in the following table:

(i) The Adjective in the first inflection:

Follows a word or phrase, limits the use of a word, is used as a Noun	**ku**

(ii) In the second inflection:

Ends a phrase, limits a Noun, follows an Adverb	**i**

(iii) In the third inflection:

Explains the indefinite future, occurs with one or more Adjectives	**kere-ba**

11. Adjectives are inflected, as explained above, only in the three forms and the eight different usages. They are inflected, as are Verbs, to indicate future tense, also the Negative, and the Imperative Mood.

12. Adjectives follow the laws of **Ombin**, Euphony, in the inflection of the final syllables. These euphonic changes occur when the Adjective precedes the Verb form **gozai-masu: O-taku kara gakkō e wa chikō gozai-masu ka?** Is your home near the school? **Chikō**, near, in **chikō gozai-masu**, would without euphonic change, be **chika-ku**, but as it precedes **go-zai-masu**, the **ku** becomes **u**, as in **chika-u**, Romanized as **chikō**.

Teishaba e iku no wa mada hayō gozai-masu ka? Is it still too early to go to the station?

Ueno no hana wa mankai de utsukushū gozai-masu. The full red cherry blossoms in Ueno Park are beautiful.

Michi ga semō gozai-mashi-temo, tōre-nai hodo de wa gozai-masen. Though the street is narrow, it is not impossible to pass.

In the above examples the forms of the words **hayō, utsu-kushū,** and **semō** would naturally be **haya-ku, utsukushi-ku,**

and **sema-ku**, but as they precede **gozai-masu**, the **ku** changes into **u**, becoming **hayō (haya-u)**, **utsukushū (utsukushi-u)**, etc.

13. In standard Japanese the inflection of Adjectives by **Ombin**, Euphony, occurs only in the above cases. However, in some localities, especially in the Kansai district, exceptions are found, as in the following instances:

Akaru-ku nat-te kita, It has became light, becomes **akarū**.

Yawaraka-ku ni-te kudasai, Please boil it till it is tender, becomes **yawara-kō**.

Isogashi-ku shi-te i-masu. I am busy, becomes **isoga-shū**.

Boku no heya wa sema-ku-te ne, My room is small, becomes **se-mō**.

Shiken ga muzukashi-ku te, Examinations are difficult, becomes **muzuka-shū**.

However, the following phrases are used in all parts of the country:

O-machi-dō sama, I am sorry to have kept you waiting, is used instead of **Omachidō-ku sama**.

Go-kigen-yō, Good health to you, instead of **go-kigen-yo-ku**.

O-mede-tō, Congratulations, instead of **omedeta-ku**.

In the adove instances, however, since the words **gozai-masu** are implied, as in **omede-tō gozai-masu**, the original inflection is of the regular kind.

VIII. DŌSHI (動詞)—VERBS

1. The **Yōgen** (用言), Declinable Words, form the main parts of the Predicate in the sentence and contain two parts of speech. The **Yōgen** may be either Verbs or Adjectives. In this Chapter the Verb will be discussed.

2. **Dōshi**, Verbs, express action, being and the appearance of things.

Hon wo yomi-masu. I read a book.
Uma to ushi ga i-masu. There are a horse and a cow.
Mukō no yama no ue ni tsuki ga mie-masu. The moon is seen over that mountain.
Utsukushii hana ga saki-mashita. A beautiful flower has bloomed.
Dōzo mado wo ake-te kudasai. Please open the window.

In the above examples, **yomi**, read, in **yomi-masu; i**, be, in **i-masu; saki**, bloom, in **saki-masu** and **ake**, open, in **ake-te kudasai**, are **Dōshi**, Verbs. It is very important for the reader to understand clearly that in this Grammar, **masu, mashita,** and all kindred forms are not considered as parts of Verbs, but as Auxiliary Verbs, which are fully explained in Chapter IX. To note this clear distinction is absolutely essential to an understanding of the discussion of Verbs as here presented.

INFLECTION OF VERBS

3. As Verbs are **Yōgen**, Declinable Words, their word-ends are inflected; for instance, **yomi**, read, in **yomi-masu, is** inflected, in some of its forms as follows:

yo	**ma-(nai)**	do not read
	mi-(te)	read and
	mu	read
	me-(ba)	if I read

The first part **yo,** does not change; the second part is changed into **ma, mi, mu** and **me.** This is the same with **akeru,**

open, in **ake-te kudasai**; the first part, **ake**, does not change, but the second part is changed into **ake-(nai), ake-(te), ake-(ru)**, and **ake-(reba)**. In this way every Verb has its inflection. The first part, which does not change, is called **Gokan** (語幹), word-stem, or **Gokon** (語根), word-root, and the second part, which changes, is called **Gobi** (語尾), word-end. The changing of these word-ends is called **Katsuyō** (活用), "living work," or Inflection of Verbs.

4. The conclusive forms of all Verbs are complete and independent words in themselves. For instance, in the Verb **yomi-masu**, the conclusive form is **yomu.** Of **ake** in **ake-te kudasai**, the conclusive form is **akeru.** These are the Verb forms found in dictionaries.

5. According to their inflection, Verbs are divided into three groups. Before explaining each group it is necessary to show the Fifty Syllables of the Japanese Language.

In the following Table the horizontal syllable Row is called a **Dan** (段), and the vertical Column a **Gyō** (行). Verbs are inflected by making changes in the syllable forms in these **Gyō,** Columns, and **Dan,** Rows.

TABLE OF THE FIFTY SOUNDS (SYLLABLES) IN THE JAPANESE LANGUAGE

Dan (段) Row	**Gyō** (行) Column									
A あ row	**a** あ	**ka** か	**sa** さ	**ta** た	**na** な	**ha** は	**ma** ま	**ya** や	**ra** ら	**wa** わ
I い row	**i** い	**ki** き	**shi** し	**chi** ち	**ni** に	**hi** ひ	**mi** み	**i** い	**ri** り	**wi** ゐ
U う row	**u** う	**ku** く	**su** す	**tsu** つ	**nu** ぬ	**fu** ふ	**mu** む	**yu** ゆ	**ru** る	**u** う
E え row	**e** え	**ke** け	**se** せ	**te** て	**ne** ね	**he** へ	**me** め	**ye** え	**re** れ	**we** ゑ
O お row	**o** お	**ko** こ	**so** そ	**to** と	**no** の	**ho** ほ	**mo** も	**yo** よ	**ro** ろ	**wo** を

Nigori-on (濁音) Sonant				
ga が	**za** ざ	**da** だ	**ba** ば	**pa** ぱ
gi ぎ	**ji** じ	**(d)ji** ぢ	**bi** び	**pi** ぴ
gu ぐ	**zu** ず	**(d)zu** づ	**bu** ぶ	**pu** ぷ
ge げ	**ze** ぜ	**de** で	**be** べ	**pe** ぺ
go ご	**zo** ぞ	**do** ど	**bo** ぼ	**po** ぽ

TABLE SHOWING THE FOUR ROW INFLECTION

Conclusive Form			Verb Stem	Row	Inflection.			
					I	II	III	IV
kaku	書く	write	**ka** か	**ka** か	**ka** か	**ki** き	**ku** く	**ke** け
kogu	漕ぐ	row	**ko** こ	**ga** が	**ga** が	**gi** ぎ	**gu** ぐ	**ge** げ
osu	押す	push	**o** お	**sa** さ	**sa** さ	**shi** し	**su** す	**se** せ
utsu	打つ	strike	**u** う	**ta** た	**ta** た	**chi** ち	**tsu** つ	**te** て
shinu	死ぬ	die	**shi** し	**na** な	**na** な	**ni** に	**nu** ぬ	**ne** ね
nuu	縫ふ	sew	**nu** ぬ	**ha** は	**ha** は	**hi** ひ	**fu** ふ	**he** へ
yobu	呼ぶ	call	**yo** よ	**ba** ば	**ba** ば	**bi** び	**bu** ぶ	**be** べ
nomu	飲む	drink	**no** の	**ma** ま	**ma** ま	**mi** み	**mu** む	**me** め
toru	取る	take	**to** と	**ra** ら	**ra** ら	**ri** り	**ru** る	**re** れ

6. The first form of inflection is called the **Yo-Dan-Katsuyō** (四段活用), Four Row Inflection, in which the four different terminal syllables of the given verb-stem change successively in inflection into the forms shown in Rows **a, i, u,** and **e,** in the "Table of Fifty Sounds." For example, in the Verb **yo-mu,** read, the inflectional changes take place in four Rows in the **ma** Column, as **yo-ma, yo-mi, yo-mu** and **yo-me.** The previous Table shows the forms of the Four Row Inflection Verbs in each Row, for the nine Verbs chosen.

As there are no Four Row Inflection Verbs in the **a, za, da, ya,** and **wa** Columns, these Columns are not shown in the above Table.

7. The second form of Verb Inflection is called the **Ichi-Dan-Katsuyō** (一段活用), One Row Inflection, in which the **Gobi**, terminal syllable, changes take place in one Row in the Table of Fifty Sounds. For example, the inflected forms of the Verb **akeru**, open, are **a-ke-(te), a-ke-(ru)** and **a-ke-(reba),** but the **ke** in **ake** is always the same, never changing into the sounds in the other Rows. Therefore, this is called an **Ichi-Dan-Katsuyō**, One Row Inflection Verb.

8. There are two kinds of **Ichi-Dan-Katsuyō,** One Row Inflection Verbs. Verbs of the first class are inflected only in the **i** (い) Row or upper Row sounds, while those of the second class are inflected only in the **e** (え) Row or lower Row sounds. The former is called the **Kami-Ichi-Dan-Katsuyō** (上一段活用), Upper One Row Inflection and the latter the **Shimo-Ichi-Dan-Katsuyō** (下一段活用), Lower One Row Inflection. The **i** (い) Row is called the upper, and the **e** (え) Row the lower because of their relative positions in the Japanese way of arranging the Table of Fifty Sounds.

9. The Verb **okiru,** get up, which belongs to the **Kami-Ichi-Dan,** Upper One Row Inflection, is inflected into **o-ki-(nai), o-ki-(te), o-ki-(ru), and o-ki-(reba).** The inflection of Upper One Row Inflection Verbs in each Column is shown in the following Table:

TABLE OF UPPER ONE ROW INFLECTION

Conclusive Form			Verb Stem		Row		Inflection							
							I		II		III		IV	
iru	射る	shoot	i	い	a	あ	i	い	i	い	i-ru	いる	i-re	いれ
okiru	起る	get up	o	お	ka	か	ki	き	ki	き	ki-ru	きる	ki-re	きれ
sugiru	過ぎる	pass by	su	す	ga	が	gi	ぎ	gi	ぎ	gi-ru	ぎる	gi-re	ぎれ
sasshiru	察しる	guess	satsu	さつ	sa	さ	shi	し	shi	し	shi-ru	しる	shi-re	しれ
anjiru	案じる	worry	an	あん	za	ざ	zi	じ	zi	じ	zi-ru	じる	zi-re	じれ
ochiru	落ちる	fall	o	お	ta	た	chi	ち	chi	ち	chi-ru	ちる	chi-re	ちれ
tojiru	閉ぢる	shut	to	と	da	だ	(d)i	ぢ	(d)ji	ぢ	(d)ji-ru	ぢる	(d)ji-re	ぢれ
niru	煮る	boil	ni	に	na	な	ni	に	ni	に	ni-ru	にる	ni-re	にれ
shiiru	強ひる	force	shi	し	ha	は	hi	ひ	hi	ひ	hi-ru	ひる	hi-re	ひれ
nobiru	伸びる	stretch	no	の	ba	ば	bi	び	bi	び	bi-ru	びる	bi-re	びれ
miru	見る	see	mi	み	ma	ま	mi	み	mi	み	mi-ru	みる	mi-re	みれ
mukuiru	報いる	reward	muku	むく	ya	や	i	い	i	い	i-ru	いる	i-re	いれ
oriru	降りる	get down	o	お	ra	ら	ri	り	ri	り	ri-ru	りる	ri-re	りれ
(w)iru	居る	be	(w)i	ゐ	wa	わ	(w)i	ゐ	(w)i	ゐ	(w)i-ru	ゐる	(w)i-re	ゐれ

TABLE OF THE LOWER ONE ROW INFLECTION

Conclusive Form			Verb Stem		Row		Inflection							
							I		II		III		IV	
eru	得る	get	**e**	え	**a**	あ	**e**	え	**e**	え	**e-ru**	える	**e-re**	えれ
ukeru	受ける	receive	**u**	う	**ka**	か	**ke**	け	**ke**	け	**ke-ru**	ける	**ke-re**	けれ
nageru	投げる	throw	**na**	な	**ga**	が	**ge**	げ	**ge**	げ	**ge-ru**	げる	**ge-re**	げれ
noseru	のせる	put on	**no**	の	**sa**	さ	**se**	せ	**se**	せ	**se-ru**	せる	**se-re**	せれ
mazeru	交ぜる	mix	**ma**	ま	**za**	ざ	**ze**	ぜ	**ze**	ぜ	**ze-ru**	ぜる	**ze-re**	ぜれ
suteru	捨てる	discard	**su**	す	**ta**	た	**te**	て	**te**	て	**te-ru**	てる	**te-te**	てれ
naderu	撫でる	stroke	**na**	な	**da**	だ	**de**	で	**de**	で	**de-ru**	でる	**de-re**	でれ
kasaneru	重ねる	pile on	**kasa**	かさ	**na**	な	**ne**	ね	**ne**	ね	**ne-ru**	ねる	**ne-re**	ねれ
sonoeru	供へる	preprae	**sona**	そな	**ha**	は	**he**	へ	**he**	へ	**he-ru**	へる	**he-re**	へれ
naraberu	並べる	arrange	**nara**	なら	**da**	ば	**be**	べ	**be**	べ	**be-ru**	べる	**be-re**	べれ
atsumeru	集める	gather	**atsu**	あつ	**ma**	ま	**me**	め	**me**	め	**me-ru**	める	**me-re**	めれ
moeru	燃える	burn	**mo**	も	**ya**	や	**ye**	え	**ye**	え	**ye-ru**	える	**ye-re**	えれ
ireru	入れる	put in	**i**	い	**ra**	ら	**re**	れ	**re**	れ	**re-ru**	れる	**re-re**	れれ
su(w)eru	据ゑる	place in	**su**	す	**wa**	わ	**we**	ゑ	**we**	ゑ	**we-ru**	ゑる	**we-re**	ゑれ

10. In the Verb **nageru,** throw, which belongs to the Lower One Row Inflection, the word-end is inflected as follows: **na-ge-(nai), na-ge-(te)** and **na-ge-(reba).** The above Table (page 47) shows the changes in representative Lower One Row Inflection Verbs of each Column.

11. The third group inflection is called **Henkaku-Katsuyō** (變格活用), Irregular Inflection, in which the change involves the verb-stems. There are two kinds of Irregular Inflection Verbs, of one word each. One is the **Ka** Column Inflection and the other the **Sa** Column Inflection. In the **Ka** Column Irregular Inflection is the Verb **kuru,** come, which is inflected as follows:

Dare mo ko-nai. Nobody has come.
Dare ga ki-mashita ka? Who came?
Dare ga ku-ru-deshō. Who will come?
Dare ka ku-re-ba. If some one comes.

Thus the verb-stem changes into **ko, ki, ku,** the last form being followed by the **ru** and **re** syllables.

12. The **Sa** Column Irregular Inflection class contains only one Verb, **suru,** do, which is inflected as follows:

Shigoto wo shi-nai (or **se-nai**). He does not do his work.
Shigoto wo shi-mashita. He has done his work.
Shigoto wo su-ru. He does his work.
Shigoto wo su-re-ba. If he does his work.

Thus, the verb-stem changes into **se, shi,** and **su,** the last being followed by the **ru** and **re** syllables.

13. The following Table shows the inflection of these two Irregular Verbs:

TABLE OF THE IRREGULAR INFLECTION

Conclusive Form	Row	Inflection			
		I	II	III	IV
kuru 來る come	**ka** か	**ko** こ	**ki** き	**ku-ru** くる	**ku-re** くれ
suru 爲る do	**sa** さ	**se** せ	**shi** し	**su-ru** する	**su-re** すれ

Sometimes **ko** in the first inflection form of the **Ka** Column is changed into **ki,** as **ki-nai,** not come, instead of **ko-nai,** and **se** in the first inflection of the **Sa** Row is changed into **shi-nai,** not do, instead of **se-nai.**

14. The Inflection of Verbs is always limited to one Column, as shown in the Table, never changing to another Column. Thus the Verb **kaku,** write, is inflected in the **Ka** Column only, as **ka-ka, ka-ki, ka-ku** and **ka-ke. Nomu** is inflected only in the **Ma** Column, as **no-ma, no-mi, no-mu,** and **no-me,** never as **no-ku,** or **no-se.**

15. There are only two Verbs of the Irregular Inflection, **kuru** and **suru.** But Verbs of the Four Row Inflection and of the One Column Inflection are so numerous that it is difficult to distinguish each kind. A simple method of distinguishing Four Row Inflection Verbs and One Row Inflection Verbs is to note the Vowel in the syllable preceding the negative forms **nai, nu** or **zu:** (i) If the vowel in this preceding syllable is **a** (あ), the Verb belongs to the Four Row Inflection; (ii) if it ends in **i** (い), it belongs to the Upper One Row Inflection; (iii) if it ends in **e** (え), to the Lower One Row Inflection.

For instance, the Negative forms of the Verb **oru,** bend, are **o-ra-nai, o-ra-nu** and **o-ra-zu,** that is, the end-syllable of the verb-root is **ra.** Therefore the Verb **oru,** bend, belongs to the Four Row Inflection, and is inflected in the **Ra** Column. The Negative forms of the Verb **kareru,** fade out, are **ka-re-nai, ka-re-nu** and **ka-re-zu.** The syllable preceding the Negative termination being **re,** one knows at once that the Verb belongs to the Lower One Row Inflection. The first Negative form of **tobu,** fly, is **to-ba-nai,** therefore it is a **Ba** Column, Four Row Inflection Verb. The form of the Verb **ochiru,** drop, to which the Negative endings are attached, is **o-chi** and belongs to the **Ta** Column, (**ta, chi,** etc.), Upper One Row Inflection. In the same manner, the first Negative form of **nobiru,** grow, is **no-bi-nai,** and hence it belongs to the **Ba** Column (**ba, bi,** etc), Upper One Row Inflection. The Negative form of **kaneru,** combine (or unite), is **ka-ne-nai,** and hence it is a **Na** Column (**na, ne,** etc.) Verb of the Lower One Row Inflection.

16. The following Table shows various types of inflection:

TABLE SHOWING DIFFERENT INFLECTIONS.

Kind of Inflection		Verbs of Inclusive Form	Verb Stem	Inflection I Conditional, suppositional and negative forms.	Inflection II When used as nouns, or when connected with declinable words.	Inflection III When ending sentence, or connected with non-declinable words	Inflection IV Indicating certainty, or command (imperative.)
Four Row (四 段)		**Yomu** 讀む Read	**yo**	**ma** { **ba** / **nai**	**mi** { **te** / **masu**	**mu**	**me** { **ba** / **yo**
One Row (一 段)	Upper (上)	**Ochiru** 落る Fall	**o**	**chi** { **reba** / **nai**	**chi** { **te** / **masu**	**chiru**	**chi** { **reba** / **yo**
One Row (一 段)	Lower (下)	**Suteru** 捨る Throw away	**su**	**te** { **reba** / **nai**	**te** { **te** / **masu**	**teru**	**te** { **reba** / **yo**
Irregular (變 格)		**Kuru** 來る Come	**ko** or **ki**	**ku-reba** **ko-nai** **ki-nai**	**ki** { **te** / **masu**	**kuru**	**ku-reba** **ko-i**
Irregular (變 格)		**Suru** 爲る Do	**shi** or **se**	**su-reba** **shi-nai** **se-nai**	**shi** { **te** / **masu**	**suru**	**su-reba** **se-yo**

17. Verbal Nouns, expressing action, being and appearance, usually of Chinese origin, are followed by **suru**, do. The combined forms are used as Verbs and therefore require inflection. For instance, when using **benkyō**, study, with **suru** as a Verb, it is inflected as follows:

benkyō
- **su-reba**
- **se** } **nai**
- **shi** } **nai**
- **shi** { **te** / **masu**
- **su-ru**
- **se-yo**

The same rule applies to such Verbal Nouns as **o-machi**, waiting, **o-yomi**, reading, **o-tasuke**, helping, etc. This is also true of other foreign words used as Verbs:

taipu-suru, type.
peinto-suru, paint.

18. In some cases Verbal Nouns of Chinese origin have been merged with the Verb **suru**, do, into single Verbs. **Jukusu**, ripen, **aisu**, love, **ōjiru**, respond, are examples of this type. They are inflected according to the above mentioned rules, and in inflection and use need not be distinguished from other Verbs. The following Diagram shows the inflection of two of these Verbs:

juku
- **sa**
- **shi**
- **su**
- **se**

Sa Column, Four Row Inflection.

ō
- **ji**
- **jiru**
- **ji-reba**

Za Column, Upper One Row Inflection.

EUPHONY

19. There are some irregularities in the inflection of Verbs

due to **Ombin** (音便), Euphony. For instance, **tori-te,** take, becomes **tot-te**; **kaki-te,** write, becomes **kai-te,** and **yomi-te,** read, becomes **yon-de.** This is true not only with Verbs but also with other parts of speech. In nouns, **Nichi-hon,** Japan, becomes **Nip-pon,** and **gaku-kō,** school, becomes **gak-kō.** In Adjectives, **akaku gozai-masu,** is red, becomes **akō gozai-masu.**

20. In Verbs the **Ombin**, Euphony, changes occur only in the Four Row Inflection Verbs, and then only when preceding the syllables **te** and **ta.** There are the following three varieties:

Ombin of { **i** / **n** / **tsu** }

21. When **ki** in the Four Row Inflection of the **Ka** Column and **gi** in the Four Row Inflection of the **Ga** Column precede **te** and **ta** they become **i** by **Ombin.**

Example in the **Ka** Column:

Sensei no o-hanashi wo kii-te (kiki-te) i-mashita. I was listening to my teacher's story.

Example in the **Ga** Column:

Iso-i-da(iso-gi-ta) node hitoashi saki ni shitsurei itashi-mashita. As I was in a hurry, I left impolitely before you did.

In words in the **Ga** Column **te** and **ta** are changed into the sonants **de** and **da.** One exception to the above rule is in the Verb **iku,** go. As this is in the **Ka** Column Four Row Inflection, it should, according to the rule, be accompanied by the **i Ombin**, Euphony, but instead it is accompanied by the **tsu Ombin** and becomes **it-te** and **it-ta.**

22. When **ni** in the Four Row Inflection of the **Na** Column, **bi** in the Four Row Inflection of the **Ba** Column, and **mi** in the Four Row Inflection of the **Ma** Column precede **te** and **ta** they become **n** by **Ombin.**

Example in the **Na** Column:

Byōki de shin-da (shini-ta) hito ga ō gozai-masu. Many people died of illness.

Example in the **Ba** Column:

Kono nimotsu wo hakon-de (hakobi-te) kudasai. Please carry this baggage.

Example in the **Ma** Column:

Densha ga kon-de (komi-te) i-te totemo nore-masen. The street car is so crowded that I cannot get in.

In all these three cases **te** and **ta** are changed into the sonants **de** and **da.**

23. When **chi** in the Four Row Inflection of the **Ta** Column, **hi** in the Four Row Inflection of the **Ha** Column, and **ri** in the Four Row Inflection of the **Ra** Column precede **te** and **ta** they become **tsu.**

Example in the **Ta** Column:

Achira kara isu wo hitotsu mot-te (mochi-te) ki-te kudasai. Please bring a chair from over there.

Example in the **Ha** Column:

Heta demo warat-te (warai-te) wa komari-masu yo. Even if I am awkward (at this) it will embarrass me if you laugh.

Example in the **Ra** Column:

Kitte wo ut-te (uri-te) iru tokoro wa dochira desu ka? Where do they sell (postage) stamps?

In the first example, **hi** in the Four Row Inflection of the **Ha** Column (**ha, hi,** etc.) sometimes changes to **u Ombin** instead of to **tsu**:

Mina ga omoshirosō ni warō-te (warai-te) i-mashita. Everybody was laughing merrily.

Ginza kara kō-te (ka-hi-te) ki-mashita. I bought it on the Ginza.

24. **Kariru**, borrow, is a Verb of the **Ra** Column, Four Row Inflection and should change to **kat-te** and **kat-ta** by the **tsu Ombin,** as do the Verbs **tori-te,** take, and **uri-te,** sell, etc., but in the Tōkyō dialect **kari-te** and **kari-ta** are used without **Ombin.** The reason is probably that the Verb **kau,** buy, changes in the same way into **kat-te** and **kat-ta** by **Ombin.** Therefore,

the sentence **Watakushi wa ie wo kat-te hik-koshi-mashita,** may either mean, I have bought, or rented, a house and moved into it.

In order to make a distinction between these two words, the Verb **kari-te** is used without Euphony. There would be more unity if the form **kari-te** would change to **kat-te** and **kat-ta** as do other Four Row Inflection Verbs of the **Ra** Column, also if **hi** in the **Ha** Column of the Four Row Inflection Verbs would change into **u: kau-te (kō-te), warau-te (warō-te),** laugh, and **ni-nau-te (ninō-te),** be fragrant, by adopting the **u Ombin**.

HONORIFIC VERBS

25. There are special Verbs which indicate politeness. They are called **Keigo** (敬語), Honorific Words, and are divided into two kinds: those used for the second and third person and those used for the first person. The former are called **Keishō** (敬稱), Words of Respect, and the latter **Kenshō** (謙稱), Words of Humility, or Depreciation.

26. Examples of **Keishō: Ossharu**, say; **kudasaru**, give; **nasaru**, do; **asobasu**, do; **mesu**, wear, ride, put on, etc; **agaru**, eat, drink; **meshi-agaru**, eat, drink; **irassharu**, be, come, go; **mieru**, come, appear.

27. Examples of **Kenshō: Ageru**, give; **sashiageru**, give; **mōsu**, say; **mōshiageru**, say; **itasu**, do; **tsukamatsuru**, do; **taberu**, eat; **itadaku**, eat, drink, receive; **uketamawaru**, hear; **mairu**, go, come; **agaru**, visit; **ukagau**, ask, visit; **negau**, ask; **zonzuru**, know, think, and **kashikomaru**, understand.

28. There is another Honorific Word, **gozaru**, be, used for the second and third person as well as for the first person.

29. The Inflection of Honorific Verbs (敬稱動詞) follows the same rules as other Verbs, as explained above. When the following Verbs are followed by **masu**, euphonic changes occur.

Nasaru, do, becomes **nasari-masu,** or **nasai-masu;**
Os-sharu, say, becomes **osshari-masu** or **osshai-masu;**

Kudasaru, give, becomes **kudasari-masu** or **kudasai-masu;**
Iras-sharu, be, come, do, becomes **irasshari-masu,** or **iras-shai-masu;**
Gozaru, be, becomes **gozari-masu** or **gozai-masu.**

The last mentioned Verb, **gozaru,** is almost never used in inflected forms except with **masu.**

INTRANSITIVE AND TRANSITIVE VERBS

30. According to their nature, Verbs are divided into two kinds: **Jidōshi** (自動詞), Intransitive Verbs, and **Tadōshi** (他動詞), Transitive Verbs.

31. When the Subject of the sentence acts independently, as indicated in the Verb, without reference to other objects, the Verb is Intransitive. In the following sentences the words **naku, saku, suwaru, ai-te** and **nemut-te** are **Jidōshi,** Intransitive Verbs:

Tori ga naku. Birds sing.
Hana ga saku. Flowers bloom.
Zashiki ni suwaru. I sit in the parlour.
Shōji ga ai-te iru. The paper door is open.
Kodomo ga suyasuya nemut-te iru. The child is sleeping soundly.

32. When the action of the Verb is upon something other than the Subject, the Verb is Transitive. In the following sentences, **toru,** in **tot-te, akeru** in **ake-mashita, yaru, kaburu** and **kaku** are **Tadōshi,** Transitive Verbs:

Hon wo tot-te kudasai. Please bring me a book.
Mado wo ake-mashita. I have opened the window.
Inu ni pan wo yaru. I give a piece of bread to the dog.
Bōshi wo kaburu. I wear my hat.
Tegami wo kaku. I write a letter.

33. The distinction between Intransitive and Transitive Verbs in sentence construction is shown in the following examples:

INTRANSITIVE VERBS	TRANSITIVE VERBS
Hi ga moe-masu. Fire burns.	**Hito ga hi wo moyashi-masu.** The man builds a fire.
Kodomo ga jidōsha ni not-te iki-mashita. The child went away in an automobile.	**Hito ga jidōsha ni kodomo wo nose-te iki-mashita.** The man put the child into an automobile and went away.

In the sentences with **Jidōshi,** Intransitive Verbs, no Object is required to give meaning, as shown in the following: **Hi ga moeru,** The fire burns, and **Kodomo ga jidōsha ni noru,** The child gets into the automobile. If the Verb be Transitive, as in **Hito ga moyasu,** the sentence is not complete; it must be supplemented by the Object, **hi,** fire. The same is true with the second sentence, **Hito ga jidōsha ni kodomo wo nose-te iki-mashita.** Thus the Transitive Verb must have an Object, which is followed by the Postposition **wo,** the sign of the Objective.

34. In spite of the difference between **Jidōshi,** Instransitive Verbs, and **Tadōshi,** Transitive Verbs, their verb-stems and inflections are sometimes identical; sometimes they have the same stems with different inflections. Sometimes the Transitive Verbs are transformed into Intransitive by changing the inflection forms and vice versa.

35. Examples of Intransitive and Transitive Verbs which have the same verb-stems and inflections:

CONCLUSIVE FORMS	INTRANSITIVE VERBS	TRANSITIVE VERBS
fuku, blow.	**Kaze ga fuku.** The wind blows.	**Hi wo fuku.** He blows the fire.
hiraku, open.	**Hana ga hiraku.** Flowers blossom out.	**Mado wo hiraku.** He opens the windows.
masu, increase.	**Ninzu ga masu.** The number of persons increases.	**Ninzu wo masu.** He increases the number of persons.

tsumu, pile up.	**Yuki ga tsumu.** Snow piles up.	**Nimotsu wo tsumu.** He piles up baggage.
akeru, open.	**Yo ga akeru.** The night opens. (The day dawns.)	**To wo akeru.** He opens the door.
tojiru, close.	**Me ga tojiru.** The eyes close.	**Hon wo tojiru.** He closes the book.
haneru, splash.	**Doro ga haneru.** The mud splashes.	**Doro wo haneru.** He splashes mud.

36. Examples of Intransitive and Transitive Verbs which have the same verb-stems but different inflections:

INTRANSITIVE VERBS Four Row Inflection.	TRANSITIVE VERBS One Row Inflection.
To ga aku. The door opens.	**To wo akeru.** He opens the door.
Oke ga aku. The barrel empties.	**Oke wo akeru.** He empties the barrel.
Ashi ga muku. The feet turn.	**Ashi wo mukeru.** He turns his feet.
Hi ga tsuku. The fire starts.	**Hi wo tsukeru.** He starts the fire.
Ki ga tsuku. He (or I) noticed it.	**Ki wo tsukeru.** He pays attention.
Hito ga noku. The man moves aside.	**Hito wo nokeru.** He moves the man aside.
Tsukemono ga tsuku. The pickles are made (seasoned).	**Tsukemono wo tsukeru.** He makes pickles.
Keiko ga tsuzuku. The lesson continues.	**Keiko wo tsuzukeru.** He continues the lesson.
Tegami ga todoku. The letter arrives.	**Tegami wo todokeru.** He delivers the letter.
Kokoro ga yawaragu. The heart yields (is conciliated).	**Kokoro wo yawarageru.** He softens his heart.
Hata ga tatsu. The flag is raised.	**Hata wo tateru.** He puts up a flag.

Kodomo ga sodatsu. The child grows.	**Kodomo wo sodateru.** He brings up the child.
Hi ga chigau. The day is different (This is the wrong day).	**Hi wo chigaeru.** He makes a mistake in the day.
Hito ga sorou. All the people are here.	**Hito wo soroeru.** He gets the people together.
Fune ga ukabu. The ship floats.	**Fune wo ukaberu.** He floats the boat.
Heitai ga narabu. Soldiers form in line.	**Heitai wo naraberu.** He lines up the soldiers.
Chikara ga komu. To be full of power.	**Chikara wo komeru.** He exerts his full force.
Nawa ga karamu. The rope twists.	**Nawa wo karameru.** He twists the rope.

37. Examples of Four Row Inflection Intransitive Verbs which change into Transitive Verbs of the Lower One Row Inflection of a different Row, the **a** (あ) Row becoming the **e** (え) Row:

INTRANSITIVE VERBS Four Row Inflection	TRANSITIVE VERBS Lower One Row Inflection
Densha ga tomaru. The tram-car stops.	**Densha wo tomeru.** He stops the tram-car.
Hito ga atsumaru. People gather.	**Hito wo atsumeru.** He collects people together.
Iriguchi ga shimaru. The entrance door closes.	**Iriguchi wo shimeru.** He closes the entrance door.
Te ga kakaru. It requires much trouble.	**Te wo kakeru.** He does it with care.
Bōshi ..ga ..kakaru. The hat hangs.	**Bōshi wo kakeru.** He hangs up the hat.
Tako ga agaru. The kite flies.	**Tako wo ageru.** He flies a kite.
Ana ga fusagaru. The hole closes.	**Ana wo fusageru.** He closes the hole.
Hito ga noru. The man rides.	**Hito wo noseru.** He lets (causes) the man (to) ride.

Satō ga mazaru. Sugar is mixed.	**Satō wo mazeru.** He mixes sugar.
Hi ga kasanaru. The days accumulate (Time passes).	**Hi wo kasaneru.** He took many days (in doing it).
Hōhō ga kawaru. The method changes.	**Hōhō wo kaeru.** He changes the method.
Sumi ga kusuburu. The charcoal smokes.	**Sumi wo kusuberu.** He makes the charcoal smoke.

38. Examples of Four Row Inflection Intransitive Verbs which change into Transitive Verbs of the same inflection, but in different Columns, **ru** changing into **su**:

INTRANSITIVE VERBS Four Row Inflection **Ra** Column.	TRANSITIVE VERBS Four Row Inflection **Sa** Column.
Hito ga wataru. The man crosses over.	**Hito wo watasu.** He takes the man across.
Koma ga mawaru. The top spins.	**Koma wo mawasu.** He spins the top.
Kane ga amaru. The money is more than enough.	**Kane wo amasu.** He saves some of the money.
Jochū ga kaeru. The maid returns.	**Jochū wo kaesu.** He sends back the maid.
Kane ga nokoru. Money is left over.	**Kane wo nokosu.** He retains some of the money.
Kodomo ga modoru. The child returns.	**Kodomo wo modosu.** He sends back the child.
Kyaku ga yadoru. The guest stays.	**Kyaku wo yadosu.** He entertains the guest.
Hito ga tōru. A man passes by.	**Hito wo tōsu.** He causes the man to pass.
Byōki ga naoru. He recovers from illness.	**Byōki wo naosu.** He cures the disease.

39. Examples of Intransitive Verbs which change into Transitive by changing the terminal **ru**, into **rasu**, and by changing the end vowel in the **u** Row sounds into the **a** Row sounds, followed by **su**:

INTRANSITIVE VERBS Four Row Inflection **Ra** Column.	TRANSITIVE VERBS Four Row Inflection **Sa** Column
Kane ga naru. The bell rings.	**Kane wo narasu.** He rings the bell.
Mi ga naru. The fruit forms.	**Mi wo narasu.** (The tree) bears fruit.
Hana ga chiru. Flowers fall.	**Hana wo chirasu.** (The wind) scatters the flowers.
Mizu ga moru. The water leaks out.	**Mizu wo morasu.** He lets the water leak.
Ame ga furu. Rain falls.	**Ame wo furasu.** (God) makes the rain fall.
Bō ga soru. The stick bends.	**Bō wo sorasu.** He bends the stick.
Kuruma ga suberu. The car slides.	**Kuruma wo suberasu.** He makes the car slide.
U ga moguru. The cormorant dives.	**U wo mogurasu.** He makes the cormorant dive.
Yu ga tagiru. The water boils.	**Yu wo tagirasu.** He makes the water boil.
Inu ga hashiru. The dog runs.	**Inu wo hashirasu.** He makes the dog run.
Kodomo ga nemuru. The child sleeps.	**Kodomo wo nemurasu.** He puts the child to sleep.

40. Examples of Intransitive Verbs changing into Transitive by changing the **u** (う) Row sounds into the **a** (あ) Row sounds and adding **su**:

INTRANSITIVE VERBS Four Row Inflection **Ha** Column	TRANSITIVE VERBS Four Row Inflection **Sa** Column
Hana ga niou. The flower is fragrant.	**Hana wo niowasu.** He makes the flower give out fragrance.
Hito ga au. People meet.	**Hito wo awasu.** He causes the people to meet.

Ba Column	**Sa** Column
Ki no ha ga ukabu. The leaf floats.	**Ki no ha wo ukabasu.** He makes the leaf float.
Tori ga tobu. The bird flies.	**Tori wo tobasu.** He lets the bird fly.
Ma Column	**Sa** Column
Hana ga shibomu. The flowers wilt.	**Hana wo shibomasu.** He lets (or makes) the flowers wilt.
Seito ga yasumu. The pupils rest.	**Seito wo yasumasu.** He gives the pupils a rest.
Ka Column.	**Sa Column**
Kodomo ga aruku. The child walks.	**Kodomo wo arukasu.** He lets (or makes) the child walk.
Susuki ga nabiku. The pampas grass bends.	**Susuki wo nabikasu.** He bends the pampas grass.
Neko ga natsuku. The cat becomes tame.	**Neko wo natsukasu.** He makes the cat tame.
Hito ga odoroku. The man is surprised.	**Hito wo odorokasu.** He surprises the man.

41. Examples of Intransitive Verbs in the **i**(い) Row sounds, Upper One Row Inflection, changing into Transitive Verbs of the Four Row Inflection by changing the **i** (い) Row sounds into the **o** (お) Row sounds and changing the terminal **ru** into **su**:

INTRANSITIVE VERBS	TRANSITIVE VERBS
Upper One Row Inflection	Four Row Inflection
Ka Column	**Sa** Column
Kodomo ga okiru. The child gets up.	**Kodomo wo okosu.** He makes the child get up.
Ta Column	**Sa** Column
Ishi ga ochiru. The stone falls.	**Ishi wo otosu.** He drops the stone.
Ra Column	**Sa** Column
Hito ga oriru. People get off.	**Hito wo orosu.** He makes the people get off.

42. Examples of Intransitive Verbs of the **i**(い) Row sounds

changing into the **u** (う) Row sounds and the terminal **ru** into **su**:

INTRANSITIVE VERBS	TRANSITIVE VERBS
Upper One Row Inflection	Four Row Inflection
Ka Column	**Sa** column.
Te ga tsukiru. Every effort has been exhausted.	**Te wo tsukusu.** He tries every means.

43. Examples of Intransitive Verbs of the Upper One Row Inflection changing into Transitive Verbs of the Four Row Inflection of a different Column. The **e** (え) Row sounds change into the **a** (あ) Row and terminal **ru** changes into **su**:

INTRANSITIVE VERBS	TRANSITIVE VERBS
Lower One Row Inflection	Four Row Inflection
Ka Column	**Sa** Column
Kōri ga tokeru. The ice melts.	**Kōri wo tokasu.** He melts the ice.
Peiji ga nukeru. Pages are missing.	**Peiji wo nukasu.** He omits (some) pages.
Ga Column	**Sa** Column
Inu ga nigeru. The dog runs away.	**Inu wo nigasu.** He lets the dog run away.
Na Column	**Sa** Column
Doro ga haneru. The mud splashes.	**Doro wo hanekasu.** He splashes the mud.
Ta Column	**Sa** Column
Nozomi ga hateru. Hope dies.	**Nozomi wo hatasu.** He fulfills his hope.
Da Column	**Sa** Column
Te ga deru. The hand comes out.	**Te wo dasu.** He puts out his hand (to meddle).
Ya Column	**Sa** Column
Hi ga moyeru. The fire burns.	**Hi wo moyasu.** He makes a fire.
Hi ga kiyeru. The fire goes out.	**Hi wo kesu(kiyasu).** He extinguishes fire.
Kusa ga hayeru. The grass grows up.	**Kusa wo hayasu.** He lets the grass grow.

Ra Column	**Sa** Column
Te ga hanareru. The hand is withdrawn.	**Te wo hanasu.** He withdraws his hand.
Ie ga areru. The house is dilapidated.	**Ie wo arasu.** He ruins the house. (He lets the house go to ruin).
Kimono ga nureru. The clothes get wet.	**Kimono wo nurasu.** He wets the clothes.
Neko ga nareru. The cat gets tame.	**Neko wo narasu.** He tames the cat.
Mizu ga nagareru. The water flows.	**Mizu wo nagasu.** He lets the water run.
Sara ga kowareru. The plate breaks.	**Sara wo kowasu.** He breaks the plate.
Miya ga kegareru. The shrine is defiled.	**Miya wo kegasu.** He defiles the shrine.
Ma Column	**Sa** Column
Me ga sameru. The eyes open.	**Me wo samasu.** He opens his eyes.

44. Examples of Intransitive Verbs of the Upper One Row Inflection changing into Transitive Verbs of the Lower One Row Inflection:

INTRANSITIVE VERBS	TRANSITIVE VERBS
Upper One Row Inflection	Lower One Row Inflection
Ba Column	**Ba** Column
Hi ga nobiru. The day is postponed.	**Hi wo noberu.** He postpones the day.

45. Examples of Transitive Verbs of the Four Row Inflection changing into Intransitive Verbs of the Lower One Row Inflection by changing the **u** (う) Row sounds into **e** (え) Row sounds and adding **ru**:

TRANSITIVE VERBS	INTRANSITIVE VERBS
Four Row Inflection	One Row Inflection
Ra Column	**Ra** Column
Shōji wo yaburu. He tears the paper door.	**Shōji ga yabureru.** The paper door is torn.

Ka Column	Ka Column
Kami wo saku. He tears the paper.	**Kami ga sakeru.** The paper is torn.
Kashi wo yaku. He bakes the cake.	**Kashi ga yakeru.** The cake is baked.
Himo wo toku. He unloosens the string.	**Himo ga tokeru.** The string becomes loose.
Koe wo kiku. He hears the voice.	**Koe ga kikoeru.** The voice is heard.

46. Examples of Intransitive Verbs of the Lower One Row Inflection changing into Transitive Verbs of the Upper One Row Inflection:

INTRANSITIVE VERBS	TRANSITIVE VERBS
Lower One Row Inflection	Upper One Row Inflection
Ya Column	**Ma** Column
Yama ga miyeru. The mountain is seen.	**Yama wo miru.** He sees the mountain.
Ya Column	**Na** Column
Imo ga niyeru. The potatoes are cooked.	**Imo wo niru.** He cooks the potatoes.

47. Examples of Intransitive Verbs of the Lower One Row Inflection changing into Transitive Verbs of the Lower One Row Inflection:

INTRANSITIVE VERBS	TRANSITIVE VERBS
Lower One Row Inflection	Lower One Row Inflection
Ka Column	**Ka** Column
Michi ga wakareru. The road divides.	**Te wo wakeru.** He spreads his hands.

48. There are two classes of Intransitive Verbs: Complete and Incomplete. The former describe the Subject without the aid of other words, while the latter require Auxiliary Words.

49. For instance, in the sentence, **Tori ga naku**, The bird sings, the Verb **naku**, sing, completely describes its Subject, **tori**, bird. The same is true in all the following sentences:

Inu ga hashiri-masu. The dog runs.

Hana ga saki-masu. Flowers bloom.

Kokoro ga yawaragi-masu. His heart softens.

Shidai ni kome no nedan ga sagari-mashita. The price of rice has gradually fallen.

Ojii-san no atama ga hikat-te i-masu. The old man's head is shining.

In these sentences, **hashiru** in **hashiri-masu, fuku** in **fuki-masu, yawaragu** in **yawaragi-masu, saku** in **saki-masu, sagaru** in **sagari-mashita,** and **hikaru** in **hikat-te i-masu** are Complete Intransitive Verbs.

50. On the other hand the Intransitive Verb **noru**, ride, does not completely describe its Subject. If one says **Watakushi ga nori-masu,** I ride, one cannot understand whether I ride on a horse, a cow or a car. Therefore, in order to complete the sentence, one must add some other word, as **uma**, horse, making the sentence, **Watakushi wa uma ni nori-masu**, I ride on a horse. Thus an Incomplete Intransitive Verb is an ordinary Intransitive Verb which requires some auxiliary word to describe the Subject:

Kodomo ga niwa de ason-de i-masu. The child is playing in the garden.

Kesa hayaku gakusei ga ensoku ni dekake-mashita. Early this morning the students went for a picnic (or walking trip).

Gakkō wo de-tara guntai e haira-nake-reba nari-masen. When one leaves school he must enter the army.

In these sentences, **asobu**, play; **dekakeru**, go out; and **hairu,** enter, do not complete the meaning of the sentences without the aid of some other words, such as **niwa,** garden, **ensoku,** picnic, **gakkō,** school, and **guntai,** army. Therefore we call these Verbs Incomplete Intransitive Verbs.

51. There are also Complete and Incomplete Transitive Verbs.

52. The nature of a Transitive Verb is essentially different from that of an Intransitive one, as it can not completely describe its Subject without an Object. Therefore, unlike a Complete Intransitive Verb, a Complete Transitive Verb can

not completely describe its Subject simply by being connected with it.

53. Examples of Complete Transitive Verbs:

Watakushi wa tokei wo mot-te i-masu. I have a watch.

Watakushi wa Eikokushi wo yomi-mashita. I have read English history.

Sono tegami wo dashi-te kudasai. Please post that letter.

Oni no kubi wo tot-ta yō ni yorokobi-mashita. I felt as happy as if I had taken a demon's head.

Yaoya no kanjō wo harai-mashita. I paid my greengrocer's bill.

In the above sentences, **motsu,** have; **yomu,** read; **dasu,** post or send; **toru,** take; and **harau,** pay, can make sentences with the help of their Objects only, viz.: **tokei**, watch, **Eikokushi**, English history, **tegami**, letter, **oni no kubi**, demon's head, and **kanjō**, bill. These Verbs are called Complete Transitive Verbs.

54. In the case of an Incomplete Transitive Verb, such as **oshieru**, teach, the sentence can not be completed simply by adding the object word; some other supplementary words must always be added. The sentence, **Sensei ga bumpō wo oshieru**, The teacher teaches grammar, does not define the person taught. However, if the object word, **seito**, student, be added, the meaning becomes clear: **Sensei ga seito wo oshieru**, The teacher teaches his student(s). In general, however, the meaning of the sentence does not become clear even with the object word, preceded by the Postposition **wo**, without the addition of a supplementary word, preceded by the Postposition **ni**. In the following examples **yaru**, give, **noseru**, put on (or into), and **kakeru**, cover, are Incomplete Transitive Verbs:

Kodomo ga inu ni pan wo yari-mashita. The child gave some bread to the dog.

Shafu ga kuruma ni okyaku wo nose-mashita. The rikisha-man put a guest into his jinrikisha.

Watakushi wa bōshikake ni bōshi wo kake-mashita. I hung my hat on the hat rack.

IX. JODŌSHI (助動詞)—AUXILIARY VERBS

1. **Jodōshi,** Auxiliary Verbs, help to form sentences by means of connection with other words, chiefly Verbs, but sometimes with other Auxiliary Verbs, or Nouns, which are **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Words, and Adjectives, which are **Yōgen**, Declinable Words. Though they have no meaning in themselves they are essential to the construction of complete sentences.

2. Examples:

Kisha ni nori-masu. I ride in a train.

Kisha ga teishaba ni tsuki-mashita. The train has arrived at the station.

San-ji no kisha de Kyōto e tato-u(tatō). I intend to leave for Kyōto on the three o'clock train.

In the above examples **masu,** in **nori-masu, mashita** in **tsuki-mashita,** and **u** in **tato-u** are defined and used throughout this "Grammar of Spoken Japanese" as Auxiliary Verbs. These three Auxiliary Verbs are all connected with Verbs, but the following examples show other combinations.

Ame ga fut-temo oide ni nari-tai-rashii. He evidently wishes to go, even if it rains. **Tai-rashii** is a combination of two Auxiliary Verbs.

Ki ni tomat-te iru kotori wa suzume-rashii. The little bird on that tree looks like a sparrow. **Suzume-rashii** is a combination of the **Taigen, suzume,** and the Auxiliary Verb, **rashii.**

Jidōsha de it-ta hō ga densha de iku yori mo hayai-rashii. It seems quicker to go by automobile than by street car. The expression **hayai-rashii** combines the Adjective **hayai** and the Auxiliary Verb, **rashii.**

3. **Jodōshi**, Auxiliary Verbs, are inflected by changes in their final syllables. For instance, **masu** has the following inflections:

ma { **su**, **sen**, **shō** }

and **tai** inflects as

ta { **i**, **ku**, **kere** }

These inflections resemble those of Verbs and Adjectives; some are exactly the same.

4. Auxiliary Verbs are used in very complicated ways. This is unavoidable, as they are used in the expression of complicated ideas. For purposes of clarity Auxiliary Verbs will be classified and explained according to their functions and inflections.

AFFIRMATIVE AND NEGATIVE

5. From the standpoint of use, most Auxiliary Verbs can be classified as **Kotei**(肯定), Affirmative or **Hitei**(否定), Negative. In daily conversation the affirmative statement is made by the Auxiliary Verb **masu**, is, and the negative statement by **masen**, is not.

TEN KINDS OF AUXILIARY VERBS

6. From the standpoint of the expression of ideas, Auxiliary Verbs may be divided into ten classes, viz.: four forms and six ways.

7. The first is the **Futsū** (普通), Common Form. **Masu**, as in **Watakushi wa hon wo yomi-masu,** I read a book; **masen,** in **yomi-masen**, and **nai**, in **yoma-nai**, are of the Common Form, familiar to everybody. **Masu** is Affirmative, while **masen** and **nai** are Negative. **Masu** and **masen** are connected with Verbs in their Second Row Inflection and **nai** in their First Row Inflection.

8. The second is the **Ukemi** (受身), Passive Form. The Passive Auxiliary Verbs are represented by **re** and **rare.**

These two are connected with Verbs in their First Row Inflection. **Re** is used in the Four Row Inflection and **rare** in other forms of Inflection:

Kodomo ga itazura wo shi-te o-kāsan ni shikara-re-mashita. As the child was mischievous it was scolded by its mother.

Tōkyō e yara-re-te honya no kozō ni nari-mashita. He was sent to Tōkyō and has become an apprentice in a book shop.

Anna koto wo shimbun ni dasa-re-te wa komari-masu. I am embarrassed at such a thing being published in the newspapers.

Oya kyōdai ni mo sute-rare-te, nan no yorube mo ari-masen. Forsaken even by parents, brothers and sisters he has no one to lean upon.

Kebyō no tokoro e mimai ni ko-rare-chā (te wa) mem-boku ga nai. If he comes to inquire after my feigned illness I shall have no face.

9. The above examples are all in the Affirmative but may be changed into the Negative by using **rare-masen-deshita,** or **rare-nai-deshita** instead of **rare-mashita,** as in the following:

Kodomo ga itazura wo shi-temo o-kāsan ni shikara-re-masen-deshita (or **shikara-re-nai-deshita**). Though the child was mischievous it was not scolded by its mother.

Shimbun ni dasa-re-masen de shiawase deshita. It was fortunate that it was not published in the newspapers.

Oya kyōdai ni sute-rare-nai yō, ki wo tsuke-te kudasai. Please be careful not to be forsaken by parents, brothers and sisters.

10. The third form is the **Shieki** (使役), Causative. Causative Auxiliary Verbs are used when one person controls the actions of another. The causative idea is expressed by **se** and **sase.** Generally speaking, **se** is used with Verbs of the Four

Row Inflection, and **sase** with Verbs of other Inflections.

Gakkō de wa seito ni maishū ni-kai rombun wo tsukura-se-masu. The school requires the students to write essays twice a week.

Byōki no naoru made inaka de kurasa-se-masu. I shall have him stay in the country until he recovers from his illness.

Ie no koto wa sassoku kika-se-te sashiage-masu. I shall let you know about the house immediately.

Jochū wo yon-de mado wo shime-sase-te kudasai. Please call the maid and have her close the windows.

Kodomo ni o-kashi wo tabe-sase-te i-masu. I am feeding the child cake.

11. The above examples are all in the Affirmative. The Negatives are: **ronbun wo tsukura-se-masen,** or **tsukura-se-nai; inaka de kurasa-se-masen** or **kurasa-se-nai,** and **mado wo shime-sase-nai-de kudasai.**

12. When Causative Auxiliary Verbs are connected with the Verb **suru**, do, which is of the **Sa** Column Irregular Inflection, the natural forms would be **se-sase,** and **shi-sase,** but in practice the Verb **suru** (**se** or **shi**) is omitted, the Auxiliary Verbs only being used. For example, the Regular Affirmatives would be formed as follows: **Nanika shigoto wo se-sase-**(or **shi-sase**) **te kudasai,** Please let me do some work, but actually the form becomes **Nanika shigoto wo sase-te kudasai.** The sentence **Inaka e yat-te hyakushō wo se-**(or **shi**) **sase-mashō,** I shall send him to the country and make him do farm work, becomes in actual use, **hyakushō wo sase-mashō.** Examples of Negative forms: **Yuya no sansuke wa sase-masen** (or **sase-nai**). I shall not put him to work as an attendant in a bath-house. In all such cases the inflected forms of **suru, se** and **shi,** are omitted.

13. To Verbal Nouns of Chinese or other foreign origin, Verbs of the **Sa** Column Irregular Inflection are usually connected by Auxiliary Verbs. But if these Verbs are used in the Causative form, **se** and **shi** are omitted as in the above,

and **sase** only is used.

Dare ka ni annai-se-(or **shi**) **sase-masu.** I shall have somebody guide you, becomes **Dare ka ni annai-sase-masu.**

Tōkyō no daigaku e nyūgaku se-(or **shi**) **sase-mashita.** I enrolled him in a Tōkyō college, becomes **nyūgaku-sase-mashita.**

14. The fourth form of Auxiliary Verbs is the combination of the Causative and Passive. This is called the **Shieki no Ukemi** (使役の受身), Passive Causative, and indicates that the speaker is under the control of the causative action of other persons.

Nagai tegami wo kaka-se-rare-te, heikō shi-mashita. He made me write such a long letter that I got sick of it.

Umaku mo nai kake wo sanbai mo tabe-sase-rare-mashita. He made me eat three bowls of tasteless noodles (**kake**).

Nipponfuku de to iu node, yōfuku wo nugase-rare-te shashin wo tori-mashita. As he asked me to be photographed in Japanese clothes, I had to take off my foreign ones.

Kogoto wo iu oyaji no tokoro ni wa ikkoku demo i-sase-rare-nai hō ga shiawase desu. It is better not to be made to stay even a minute with a father who nags at you.

Tamago wo futatsu kasane-sase-rare-temo, sō wa deki-masen yo. Even if you (attempt to) compel me to pile two eggs one upon the other, it is impossible for me to do so.

15. The above four forms of Auxiliary Verbs, i.e., Common, Passive, Causative and Passive Causative, are shown in the following table:

	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	
Common Form	**tsukai-masu** use	**tsukai-masen** **tsukawa-nai**	not use
	oshie-masu teach	**oshie-masen** **oshie-nai**	not teach

Passive	**tsukawa-re-masu** be used	**tsukawa-re-masen** **tsukawa-re-nai** not be used
	oshie-rare-masu be taught	**oshie-rare-masen** **oshie-rare-nai** not be taught
Causative Form	**tsukawa-se-masu** let use, or cause to use	**tsukawa-se-masen** **tsukawa-se-nai** not cause to use
	oshie-sase-masu cause to teach	**oshie-sase-masen** **oshie-sase-nai** not cause to teach
Passive of Causative Form	**tsukawa-se-rare-masu** be made to use	**tsukawa-se-rare-masen** **tsuka-wase-rare-nai** not be made to use
	oshie-sase-rare-masu be made to teach	**oshie-sase-rare-masen** **oshie-sase-rare-nai** not be made to teach

In the above Table the connection of Auxiliary Verbs with Verbs is shown by two examples: **tsukau,** use, which is a Four Row Inflection Verb, and **oshieru**, teach, which is a One Row Inflection Verb. The connection of Auxiliary Verbs of Irregular Inflection is the same as with One Row Inflection Verbs.

16. Auxiliary Verbs of the above four forms may also be considered as expressing **Suiryō** (推量), Supposition, **Kanō** (可能), Possibility, or **Kibō** (希望), Hope.

17. Auxiliary Verbs express Supposition when things as yet uncertain or indefinite are pictured as becoming definite. This Supposition is expressed by **mashō, deshō, darō (de arō), rashii**, etc.

Kono soramoyō de wa yūgata wa ame ni nari-mashō.
From the looks of this sky it will probably rain this evening.

Nanto it-temo karada no gai ni naru no wa sake deshō.
Whatever you say, sake is probably the most harmful to the body.

Ashita atari wa tegami ga kuru darō to omoi-masu.
I think the letter will probably come tomorrow.

Kyōkai de wa reihai ga hajimat-ta-rashii. It seems the worship has begun in the church.

Mō o-dekake ni nat-ta-rashū(rashi-ku) gozai-masu. It seems he has already gone out.

18. In order to make the above Affirmatives into Negatives, the Auxiliary Verbs **nai** or **masen** are used, followed by **deshō, darō** and **rashii, masen-**(or **nai**) **deshō, masen-**(or **nai**) **darō,** and **masen-**(or **nai**) **rashii.** Another Negative form of Auxiliary Verbs is **mai,** probably not, placed immediately after the Verb or after **masu.** In the latter case, the form becomes **masu-mai.**

Ashita atari wa mada tegami wa ki-masen-(or **ko-nai**) **deshō.** The letter may not come before tomorrow evening.

Byōki desu kara dekake-rare-masen-(or **rare-nai**) **darō to omoi-masu.** As he is ill, I think he cannot go out.

Ikura yon-demo kotae ga nai no wa, oide ni nari-masen-(or **nara-nai**) **rashii.** No matter how many times I call him there is no answer, so I think he must be out.

Ano mise ni wa amari jōtō no shina wa ari-masu-mai. That store probably has no high grade goods.

San-ji ni wa kisha ga tsuku-mai to it-te yukkuri dekake-mashita. He went out leisurely, saying the train will probably not arrive at three o'clock.

19. The following table shows the four forms of Suppositional Auxiliary Verbs, as combined with Verbs.

TABLE SHOWING FOUR FORMS OF SUPPOSITIONAL AUXILIARY VERBS

AFFIRMATIVE FORMS

Tsukau (使ふ) use — **Oshieru** (教へる) teach

Common Form

tsuka	**ima**	**shō**	**rashii**	**oshie**	**ma**	**shō**	**deshō**
			darō				**darō**
		su	**deshō**			**su**	**rashii**
	u				**ru**		

Passive Form

tsukawa-re	**ma**	**shō**	**rashii**	**oshie-rare**	**ma**	**shō**	**deshō**
			darō				**darō**
		su	**rashii**			**su**	**rashii**
	ru				**ru**		

Causative Form

tsukawa-se	**ma**	**shō**	**deshō**	**oshie-sase**	**ma**	**shō**	**deshō**
			darō				**darō**
		su	**rashii**			**su**	**rashii**
	ru				**ru**		

Passive of Causative Form

tsukawa-se-rare	**ma**	**shō**	**deshō**	**oshie-sase-rare**	**ma**	**shō**	**deshō**
			darō				**darō**
		su	**rashii**			**su**	**rashii**
	ru				**ru**		

NEGATIVE FORMS

Tsukau (使ふ) use		Oshieru (教へる) teach	
Common Form			
tsuka wa-nai / i-masen	deshō / darō / rashii	oshie nai / masen	deshō / darō / rashii
tsuka u-mai		oshie masu-mai	
tsuka i-masu-mai		oshie mai	
Passive Form			
tsukawa-re nai / masen	deshō / darō / rashii	oshie-rare nai / masen	deshō / darō / rashii
tsukawa-re masu-mai		oshie-rare masu-mai	
tsukawa-re mai		oshie-rare mai	
Causative Form			
tsukawa-se nai / masen	deshō / darō / rashii	oshie-sase nai / masen	deshō / darō / rashii
tsukawa-se masu-mai		oshie-sase masu-mai	
tsukawa-se mai		oshie-sase mai	
Passive of Causative Form			
tsukawa-se-rare nai / masen	deshō / darō / rashii	oshie-sase-rare nai / masen	deshō / darō / rashii
tsukawa-se-rare masu-mai		oshie-sase-rare masu-mai	
tsukawa-se-rare mai		oshie-sase-rare mai	

In the above Table, the connection of Auxiliary Verbs is shown with the Verbs **tsukau**, use, a Four Row Inflection Verb, and **oshieru**, teach, a One Row Inflection Verb. The connection of Auxiliary Verbs with Verbs of Irregular Inflection is the same as with **oshieru** and other One Row Inflection Verbs.

20. The terminal syllable **rashii** is inflected as an Adjective, as **rashi-ku** or **rash-ū** and **rashi-kere.**

Kotoshi no natsu wa Karuizawa e oide-ni naru-rashii-desu. He is likely to go to Karuizawa this summer.

Setsumei itashi-mashita ga, dōmo o-wakari de nai-rashi-ku mie-masu. Although I have explained it, he seems not to understand it at all.

Mō o-kaeri-ni nat-ta rashū gozai-masu. He seems to have returned already.

Karada ga jōbu-rashi-kereba, yatoi ireru koto ni itashi-mashō. If he seems to be strong, I shall employ him.

When **rashiku** is used with some form of **aru**, the **ku** in **rashiku** and the **a** in **aru** become one sound, **rashi-ku-at-te** becoming **rashi-kat-te**; **rashi-ku-at-ta** becoming **rashi-kat-ta**, and **rashiku-arō, rashi-ka-rō.**

21. Auxiliary Verbs of Hope, expressing desire or hope, are usually formed by adding **tai** to the Verb.

Watakushi wa ichido Nanyō e it-te mi-tai to omoi-masu. I hope to go to the South Sea Islands once (in my life).

Tabe-tai toki ni tabe-te, ne-tai toki ni ne-te i-masu. He eats when he wishes to eat and sleeps when he wishes to sleep.

Chotto o-me ni kakari-tō gozai-masu. I should like to meet him for a minute.

Fuji e nobori-ta-kere-ba, tenki ni nat-te kara no koto ni nasai. If you wish to climb Mt. Fuji, it is better to do it after the weather clears up.

22. The final syllable **tai** is inflected the same as that of **rashii,** an Auxiliary Verb of Supposition. It has the same inflection as Adjectives, the forms becoming **tai, taku,** (becoming **tō** before **gozai-masu**) and **takere.** When **tai** is con-

nected with some form of **aru**, as in **taku-at-te**, it becomes **takat-te**; **taku-at-ta** becomes **takat-ta** and **taku-arō, taka-rō.**

23. The following table shows the Four Forms of **tai** in relation to **tsukau**, teach, a Four Row Inflection Verb, and **oshieru**, teach, a One Row Inflection Verb. The connection of **tai** with Irregular Verbs is the same as with the One Row Inflection Verb **oshieru.**

TABLE SHOWING THE FORMS OF AUXILIARY VERBS OF HOPE

AFFIRMATIVE FORMS

Tsukau (使ふ) use		**Oshieru** (教へる) teach	
Common Form			
tsukai	**tai desu** **tō gozai-masu**	**oshie**	**tai desu** **tō gozai-masu**
Passive Form			
tsukawa-re	**tai desu** **tō gozai-masu**	**oshie-rare**	**tai desu** **tō gozai-masu**
Causative Form			
tsukawa-se	**tai desu** **tō gozai-masu**	**oshie-sase**	**tai desu** **tō gozoi-masu**
Passive of Causative Form			
tsukawa-se-rare	**tai desu** **tō gozai-masu**	**oshie-sase-rare**	**tai desu** **tō gozai-masu**

NEGATIVE FORMS

Tsukau (使ふ) use		**Oshieru** (教へる) teach	
Common Form			
tsukai	**taku** { **ari-masen** / **nai** } **tō gozai-masen**	**oshie**	**taku** { **ari-masen** / **nai** } **tō gozai-masen**

Passive Form

tsukawa-re { **taku** { **ari-masen** / **nai** } / **tō gozai-masen** } **oshie-sase** { **taku** { **ari-masen** / **nai** } / **tō gozai-masen** }

Causative Form

tsukawa-se { **taku** { **ari-masen** / **nai** } / **tō gozai-masen** } **oshie-sase** { **taku** { **ari-masen** / **nai** } / **tō gozai-masen** }

Passive of Causative Form

tsukawa-se-rare { **taku** { **ari-masen** / **nai** } / **tō gozai-masen** } **oshie-sase-rare** { **taku** { **ari-masen** / **nai** } / **tō gozai-masen** }

24. Auxiliary Verbs of Possibility, formed in **re** and **rare**, express Power or Possibility in Positive or Negative ways. The connection of **re** and **rare** with Verbs is the same as that of Auxiliary Verbs of the Passive Form, which has already been explained.

Konna yama nara watakushi ni mo nobo-re-masu. If it be a mountain like that, even I can climb it.

Hikōki de Ōsaka made nan-jikan de toba-re-masu ka? How many hours does it take to fly to Ōsaka by aeroplane?

Nan demo itadaki-masu ga, o-sashimi dake wa tabe-rare-masen. I can eat any food except raw fish.

Sonna ni hayaku wa ko-rare-nai deshō. I don't think I can come so early as that.

Sono kurai no koto nara watakushi ni mo se-rare-masu. Even I can do a thing like that.

25. When this **re** syllable of Auxiliary Verbs of Possibility is connected with Four Row Inflection Verbs it combines with the last sound of the Verb, changing into the sound of the **e**(え) Row in the Table of Fifty Sounds (Cf. Chapter VII No. 5 on Verbs). For instance, when the Four Row Inflection Verb **yomu**, read, combines with the Auxiliary Verb

re the combined form becomes **yoma-re-ru**. But by the above rule, **ma**, the final syllable of **yomu (yoma)**, and the auxiliary **re** are combined into one sound, becoming **me**, which is in the **e** (え) Row sound in the **ma** (ま) Column, that is, **yoma-re-ru** is changed into **yome-ru**. In the same way the Verb in the sentence, **Nippon no ji de tegami ga kaka-re-masu ka?** Can you write a letter in Japanese characters? becomes **kake-masu ka?** The Verb **iku** in the sentence, **Myōnichi ensoku ni ika-re-masu ka?** Can you go on an excursion tomorrow? becomes **ike-masu ka**? **Go-issho ni nora-re-masu**, I can ride with you, becomes **no-re-masu**, and **Sonna ni yasuku wa ura-re-masen**, I cannot sell them at such a low price, becomes **u-re-masen.** In the examples in the last section, **nobora-re-masu** may become **nobo-re-masu**, and **toba-re-masu ka** may become **to-be-masu ka**.

26. When Auxiliary Verbs of Possibility combine with some form of the Verb **suru**, do, which is in the **sa** (さ) Column, Irregular Inflection, the verb-stem, **su** becomes **se**, the resultant form becoming **se-rare-ru.** When this **su**, (root form of **suru**) is thus changed into **sa**, and combined with the Auxiliary Verb of Possibility, **rare-ru**, the form becomes **sa-re-ru.** This is also true when **suru**, do, is connected with a Verbal Noun and used as an Auxiliary Verb: **Konna ni samui noni yoku undō ga se-rare-masu ne,** How can you take exercise in such cold weather? may be expressed with **sa-re-masu ne. Seisho no oshie no tōri niwa, nakanaka jikkō se-rare-masen,** The actual practice of the teachings of the Bible is impossible (very difficult), may be expressed with **jikkō sa-re-masen.**

27. The form of the Auxiliary Verb of Possibility is the same as that of the Passive Auxiliary Verb, in **re-** and **rare.** Therefore the form of the Passive Auxiliary Verb is the same as the Common Form of the Auxiliary Verb of Possibility. And the form of the Passive Causative of the Auxiliary Verb is the same as that of the Auxiliary Verb of Possibility in its Causative Form. Unlike the Auxiliary Verbs of Supposition and Hope, both of which are used in the four forms, Auxiliary Verbs of Possibility are used only in the Common and Causative Forms, not in the Passive and Passive Causative Forms. The following table shows these relations:

TABLE SHOWING THE FORMS OF
AUXILIARY VERBS OF POSSIBILITY

AFFIRMATIVE FORMS

Tsukau (使ふ) use **Oshieru** (教へる) teach

Common Form

tsuka { **ware** / **e** } **masu** **oshie-rare-masu**

Causative Form

tsukawa-se-rare-masu **oshie-sase-rare-masu**

NEGATIVE FORMS

Common Form

tsuka { **ware** / **e-nai** } { **masen** / **nai** } **oshie-rare** { **mase** / **nai** }

Causative Form

tsukawa-se-rare { **masen** / **nai** } **oshie-sase-rare** { **masen** / **nai** }

The connection of Auxuiliary Verbs of Possibility with Verbs of the Irregular Inflection is the same as with the Verb **oshieru**, a One Row Inflection Verb.

28. **Shitei Jodōshi** (指定助動詞), Auxiliary Verbs of Declaration, make statements as to actions or things. This declaration is expressed by **desu** and **da**.

Sakura no hana wa waga yamatogokoro wo daihyō suru hana desu. Cherry blossoms are the flowers which represent our national spirit.

Ano ōkina tatemono wa nan desu ka? What is that large building?

Kore wa watakushi no hon da ga, ano hon wa chigai-masu. This book is mine but that book is not.

Sochira wa higashi da yo. That direction is East.

29. In the above examples all the Auxiliary Verbs are affirmative in form, even in interrogative sentences. The Negative Declarative is expressed by **de nai** and **ari-masen,**

Sore wa watakushi no gaitō de ari-masen. That is not my overcoat.

Koko wa Yokohama de, mada Tōkyō de ari-masen. This is Yokohama, not Tōkyō yet.

Jibun no empitsu de nai kara, oi-te it-ta no deshō. His leaving the pencil here seems to indicate that it is not his.

Ame de na-kere-ba kaze ni nari-mashō. If it does not rain the wind will come up.

30. The Auxiliary Verb of Declaration is made up of the particle **de** and **ari-masu,** a combination of the Verb **ari** and the Auxiliary Verb **masu.** The abbreviation of **de ari-masu** is **desu,** further abbreviated as **da.** These are Affirmative forms. Abbreviations in the Negatives do not occur, **ari-masen** and **nai,** being connected with **de** without change.

31. The Auxiliary Verb of Declaration is connected with Verbs in the Second and Third Row Inflection. (Cf. Chap. VII No. 6). For example one can say: **San-ji no kisha de o-tachi desu ka?** or **San-ji no kisha de tatsu no desu ka?** Are you leaving on the three o'clock train? The Declarative Particle **de** is usually combined with **Taigen,** Nondeclinable Words, or words used as **Taigen.** This is also true of Auxiliary Verbs. In the above example the whole expression, **O-tachi desu ka?** is used as a **Taigen.** Some other examples: **Kore wa watakushi no tsukue desu,** This is my desk; **Ashita no tōban wa anata desu,** Tomorrow is your turn; **Kondo wa boku hitori da,** I am alone this time, and **Kimi kitto da yo,** You will certainly do it.

32. It has already been explained that the Auxiliary Verbs **desu** and **de aru** are abbreviations of **de ari-masu.** Strictly speaking **da** is the abbreviated combination of **de** and **a** in **de aru.** The same explanation applies when **de at-ta** becomes **dat-ta** and **de-arō** becomes **da-rō.**

Ano uchi wa honya dat-ta ga, ima wa kamiya ni nat-te

i-masu. That was a bookshop but now it is a stationery shop.

Kinō wa uchi dat-ta ga, kyō wa dekake-masu. Yesterday I was at home, but today I am going out.

Sore wa Maruzen no hatsubai da-rō. That must have been bought at Maruzen's.

33. As to time, Auxiliary Verbs are of **Genzai** (現在), Present, **Kako** (過去), Past, or **Mirai** (未來), Future, Form.

The Past is expressed by **mashita** or **ta**:

Kinō oide ni nari-mashita. He came yesterday.
Mō haiken itashi-mashita. I have seen it already.
Kisha wa mō san-ji ni de-ta sō desu. It seems that the train left at three o'clock.

The Present is expressed by **masu**:

Hako ga ari-masu. There is a box.
Inu ga i-masu. There is a dog.
Kaze ga fui-te i-masu. The wind is blowing.

The Future is expressed by **u, yo,** and **mashō.**

Myōnichi Yokohama e i-kō (ka-u). I shall go to Yokohama tomorrow.
Atsu-kere-ba mado wo ake-mashō. If it's hot, I shall open the window.

34. Examples of Affirmative Auxiliary Verbs in the Past Tense:

Watakushi wa tegami wo kai-te yūbin ni dashi-mashita. I wrote a letter and posted it.

Kesa hayaku oki-ta node, kyō wa nakanaka hi ga nagai. As I got up early this morning, the day is very long.

Izen ni ki-ta toki yori mo taihen ni kaoiro ga yoku nari-mashita. Your complexion is much better than when you came before.

Mō benkyō wo shimashi-ta ka? Have you already studied your lessons?

35. Examples of Negative Auxiliary Verbs in the Past Tense in **masen, deshita** and **nai deshita**:

Hon wo yomi-masen-deshita. I did not read the book.

Tegami wo mada dashi-masen-deshita. I have not yet posted the letter.

Basu ga ki-masen-(or **konai**) **deshita kara aruki-mashita.** As the bus had not come I walked.

36. The following table shows both Affirmative and Negative Forms of Auxiliary Verbs in the Past Tense in relation to Inflected Verbs:

TABLE SHOWING AFFIRMATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORMS OF AUXILIARY VERBS IN PAST TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE FORMS

Nomu (飲む) drink		**Taberu** (食べる) eat	
nomi	**mashita**	**tabe**	**mashita**
	ta (nonda)		**ta**

NEGATIVE FORMS

no	**ma** **nai-deshita**	**tabe**	**nai-deshita**
	ma **nanda**		**nanda**
	mi-masen-deshita		**masen-deshita**

37. Examples of Auxiliary Verbs of the Present Tense:

Tsukue no ue ni atsui hon ga ari-masu. There is a thick book on the desk.

Kaze ga hageshiku fuki-masu. The wind blows fiercely.

Uma ga hashiri-masu. The horse runs.

Ōzei no hito ga kenbutsu shi-te ori-masu. Many people are looking at the sights.

38. The Future Tense of Auxiliary Verbs is formed by combining **mashō** with Verbs as inflected in the Second Row, and **u** (う) with Verbs in the First Row.

Ashita Kyōto e iki-mashō. We shall go to Kyōto tomorrow.

Tomodachi ga mie-tara go-chisō shi-mashō. When my friend comes, I shall give him a good treat (feast).

Keiko ga sume-ba sugu kae-rō (ra-u). As soon as the lessons finish, I shall return.

The Negative Future is formed by adding the Auxiliary Verb **mai**, to the Present Positive Form, as in **Kaeri-masu-mai**, I shall probably not return, and **Yuku-mai,** I shall probably not go.

39. As the future cannot be expressed except by supposition, Auxiliary Verbs of the Future have been derived from those of Supposition; their forms and connections are the same.

40. In relation to time, Auxiliary Verbs are used in the above three Tenses. They express condition at one particular instant. However, the relation between the time element and the continued state of things resulting from a given action is not always limited to one particular instant. It is sometimes continuous. Words expressing this relation are called Auxiliary Verbs of Continuation (時ノ繼續ノ助動詞).

Kodomo ga niwa ni ason-de ori-masu. The children are playing in the garden.

Engawa no shōji ga ake-te ari-masu. The veranda paper doors are open.

Utsukushiku sakura no hana ga sai-te i-masu. Cherry flowers are blooming beautifully.

Tsukue no ue ni tokei ga oi-te ari-masu. A watch is lying on the desk.

In the above examples **ori-masu**, in **ason-de ori-masu**, **i-masu** in **sai-te i-masu** and **ari-masu** in **oi-te ari-masu** are Auxiliary Verbs of Continuation. **Oru, iru,** and **aru** are primarily Verbs, but as they serve as Auxiliary Verbs in expressions like the above they are regarded as such.

41. There are two kinds of Auxiliary Verbs of Continuation. The first kind is used to denote actions still in progress. **Tori ga ton-de i-masu,** A bird is flying, means that the act of **tobu**, flying, is still going on. This is different from **Tori ga tobi-masu,** Birds fly. **Ori-masu** may be substituted for

i-masu without change in meaning. These are called Auxiliary Verbs of Continued Action.

42. The second kind of Auxiliary Verbs of Continuation express continuation of condition or state: **Ji ga kami ni kai-te ari-masu**, Characters are written on the paper, means not that the action **kaku**, write, is in progress, but that characters have been written and remain as written. The meaning differs, therefore, from **Ji wo kaki-masu,** I write characters. Auxiliary Verbs used with this second meaning are called Auxiliary Verbs of Continued State (存在的繼續助動詞).

43. As explained above, the Auxiliary Verbs of Continuation are **i-masu, ori-masu,** and **ari-masu.** These are primarily Verbs but when used as above they serve as Auxiliary Verbs, with meanings different from what they have when used as Verbs.

44. Examples of Auxiliary Verbs of Continued Action:

Watakushi wa kesa kara, kuni e dasu tegami wo kai-te i-masu (or **ori-masu**). Since morning I have been writing a letter home (to send to my country).

Konna tsumara-nai hon wo yon-de iru (or **oru**) **to, nemu-ku nari-masu.** Reading such a worthless book as this, I get sleepy.

Iie, dare-mo ano mise de kaimono wo shi-te i-masen (or **ori-masen**). No, nobody is shopping at that store.

Dōshitemo kii-te i- (or **ora**) **na-kereba nari-masen ka?** Must I then be compelled to listen?

Hikōki no ton-de iru (or **oru**) **no wo mi-te tat-te i-masu.** I am standing here looking at an airplane flying.

45. The Affirmative Forms of the Auxiliary Verbs of Continued Action are in three Tenses: Past, **kii-te i-ta,** was listening; Present, **kii-te iru,** am (or is) listening; Future, **kii-te i-mashō,** shall be listening.

The Corresponding Negative Forms are: Past, **kii-te ori-masen-deshita** (or **kii-te i-nakat-ta**), was not listening; Present, **kii-te ori-masen** (or **kii-te i-nai**), am (or is) not listening; Future, **kii-te ori-masen-deshō** (or **kii-te ina-karō**), shall not be listening.

46. The forms of the three tenses of Auxiliary Verbs of Continued Action in relation to Verbs are illustrated in the following table by two representative Verbs, **nomu**, drink, a Four Row Inflection Verb, and **taberu**, eat, a One Row Inflection Verb:

TABLE SHOWING AUXILIARY VERBS OF CONTINUED ACTION

AFFIRMATIVE FORMS

Nomu (飲む) drink		**Taberu** (食べる) eat	
	Past Form		
non-de	**ori-mashita** **ot-ta** **i-mashita** **i-ta**	**tabe-te**	**ori-mashita** **ot-ta** **i-mashita** **i-ta**
	Present Form		
non-de	**ori-masu** **oru** **i-masu** **i-ru**	**tabe-te**	**ori-masu** **oru** **i-masu** **i-ru**
	Future Form		
non-de	**ori-mashō** **o-rō** **i-mashō** **i-yō**	**tabe-te**	**ori-mashō** **o-rō** **i-mashō** **i-yō**

NEGATIVE FORMS

Nomu (飲む) drink		**Taberu** (食べる) eat	
	Past Form		
non-de	**ori-masen-deshita** **ora-nai-deshita** **ora-nakat-ta** **i-masen-deshita** **i-nai-deshita** **i-nakat-ta**	**tabe-te**	**ori-masen-deshita** **ora-nai-deshita** **ora-nakat-ta** **i-masen-deshita** **i-nai-deshita** **i-nakat-ta**

Present Form

non-de	**ori-masen** **ora-nai** **i-masen** **i-nai**	**tabe-te**	**ori-masen** **ora-nai** **i-masen** **i-nai**

Future Form

non-de	**ori-masen-deshō** **ora-nai-deshō** **ora-naka-rō** **i-masen-deshō** **i-nai-deshō** **i-naka-rō**	**tabe-te**	**ori-masen-deshō** **ora-nai-deshō** **ora-naka-rō** **i-masen-deshō** **i-nai-deshō** **i-naka-rō**

47. Examples of Auxiliary Verbs of Continued State:

Genkan ni kodomo no kutsu ga nui-de ari-masu. A child's shoes are lying at the entrance.

Kasa ga kabe ni tatekake-te ari-masu ka? Is the umbrella (or Is there an umbrella) standing against the wall?

Oku no heya ni denki ga tsuke-te ari-masu ka? Is the electric light in the back room turned on?

Shōji ga ake-te are-ba chotto shime-te kudasai. If the paper doors are open please close them.

Soko ni oi-te at-ta kozutsumi wo dashi-te kure-mashita ka? Did you kindly mail the package which was left there?

48. The three Tense Forms of the Affirmative Auxiliary Verbs of Continuation are: Past, **kai-te ari-mashita** or **kai-te at-ta,** were being written; Present, **kai-te ari-masu** or **kai-te a-ru,** are being written; Future, **kai-te ari-masu-deshō** or **kai-te a-rō (ara-u).** The corresponding Negative Forms are: Past, **kai-te ari-masen-deshita,** or **kai-te nakat-ta,** were not being written; Present, **kai-te ari-masen,** or **kai-te nai,** are not being written; Future, **kai-te ari-masen-deshō** or **kai-te naka-rō,** will not be written.

49. In addition to **aru, iru** and **oru** are sometimes used as Auxiliary Verbs of Continuation:

Machi no ryōgawa wo ōzei no hito ga arui-te iru (or **oru**). Many people are walking on both sides of the street.

Tat-te iru hito mo kake-te iru hito mo onaji yō ni warat-te i-masu (or **ori-masu**). The people standing and the people sitting are all laughing in the same way (or Both the man standing and the man sitting are laughing in the same way).

Migigawa no kabe ni ōkii ana ga ai-te i-masu (or **ori-masu**). There is a big hole in the wall on the right side.

Misesaki ni ringo ya mikan ga iroiro naran-de iru (or **oru**) **kara, sugu ni wakari-mashō.** As there are many apples and oranges shown in the front of the store, you will soon understand.

Mukō no hō ni takaku hinomaru no hata ga tat-te iru (or **oru**) **no ga mie-masu.** High up on the other side, the Japanese flag is seen flying.

50. The Affirmative Forms of Auxiliary Verbs of Continuation in the Three Tenses are: Past, **sai-te i-mashita** (or **ori-mashita**) or **sai-te i-ta** (or **ot-ta**), were blooming; Present, **sai-te i-masu** (or **ori-masu**); Future, **saite i-mashō** (or **ori-mashō**) or **sai-te i-yō** (**o-rō**), will be blooming. The corresponding Negative Forms are: Past, **sai-te i-masen-deshita** (or **ori-masen-deshita**) or **sai-te i-nakat-ta** (or **o-ra-nakat-ta**), were not blooming; Present, **sai-te i-masen** (or **ori-masen**), or **sai-te i-nai,** are not blooming; Future, **sai-te i-masen-deshō** (or **ori-masen-deshō**), or **sai-te i-naka-rō** (or **ora-naka-rō**), will not be blooming.

51. The Three Tense Forms of Auxiliary Verbs of Continuation are shown in the following table with **shimaru**, close (Intransitive), a Four Row Inflection Verb, and **ochiru**, drop, a One Row Inflection Verb:

TABLE SHOWING AUXILIARY VERBS OF CONTINUATION

AFFIRMATIVE FORMS

Shimaru (閉まる) close		Ochiru (落ちる) drop	
Past Form			
shimat-te	**ori-mashita** **ot-ta** **i-mashita** **i-ta**	**ochi-te**	**ori-mashita** **ot-ta** **i-mashita** **i-ta**
Present Form			
shimat-te	**ori-masu** **oru** **i-masu** **iru**	**ochi-te**	**ori-masu** **oru** **i-masu** **iru**
Future Form			
shimat-te	**ori-mashō** **o-rō** **i-mashō** **i-yō**	**ochi-te**	**ori-mashō** **o-rō** **i-mashō** **i-yō**

NEGATIVE FORMS

Past Form			
shimat-te	**ori-masen-deshita** **ora-nai-deshita** **ora-nakat-ta** **i-masen-deshita** **i-nai-deshita** **i-nakat-ta**	**ochi-te**	**ori-masen-deshita** **ora-nai-deshita** **ora-nakat-ta** **i-masen-deshita** **i-nai-deshita** **i-nakat-ta**
Present Form			
shimat-te	**ori-masen** **ora-nai** **i-masen** **i-nai**	**ochi-te**	**ori-masen** **ora-nai** **i-masen** **i-nai**
Future Form			
shimat-te	**ori-masen-deshō** **ora-nai-deshō** **ora-naka-rō** **i-masen-deshō** **i-nai-deshō** **i-naka-rō**	**ochi-te**	**ori-masen-deshō** **ora-nai-deshō** **ora-naka-rō** **i-masen-deshō** **i-nai-deshō** **i-naka-rō**

52. The use of the Auxiliary Verbs of Continuation, **aru, iru** and **oru,** depends upon whether they are Auxiliary Verbs of Continued Action or of Continued State. The connection of these two kinds of Auxiliary Verbs with the related Verbs depends upon the nature of the Verbs, whether they are Transitive or Intransitive. The following examples illustrate the rule that all Transitive Verbs used to express continued action are combined either with **iru** or **oru,** Auxiliary Verbs of Continuation:

53. **Kodomo ga chiisai hako wo ikutsu mo kasane-te i-masu.** The child is piling up many small boxes.

Kudamonoya no kozō ga ringo wo narabe-te i-masu. The apprentice at the fruit-shop is putting the apples in order.

Tsukue no hikidashi kara chōmen to empitsu wo dashi-te iru. He is taking out notebooks and pencils from the drawer of the desk.

Daidokoro de pan wo yai-te iru-yō desu. She seems to be baking bread in the kitchen.

54. On the other hand, the following examples show that Continued State, after the action is completed, is expressed by the same Transitive Verbs as above, by using the Auxiliary Verb of Continuation **aru.**

Chiisai hako ga ikutsu mo kasane-te ari-masu. Many small boxes are piled up.

Mise ni ringo ga narabe-te ari-masu. Apples are arranged in order in the store.

Amado ga ake-te ari-masu. The rain doors are open.

Tsukue no hikidashi kara chōmen to empitsu ga dashi-te ari-masu. A notebook and a pencil are left out of the drawer of the desk.

55. As has already been shown, it is not difficult to distinguish between Transitive Verbs of Continued Action and Continued State. The Auxiliary Verbs of Continuation, **iru** and **oru** are connected with Transitive Verbs when they express actions which are continuing or progressing, while the Auxil-

iary Verb **aru** is used with Transitive Verbs when they express continued state.

56. It remains to explain the use of Intransitive Verbs in combination with **aru** and **iru**, or **oru**. The Auxiliary Verb **aru** is never used with Intransitive Verbs. When Intransitive Verbs are used to express either Continued Action or Continued State they are always combined with the Auxiliary Verbs **iru** or **oru**, never with **aru**.

57. Examples of Auxiliary Verbs of Continued Action:

Ima hikōki ga ton-de iru (or **oru**) **to omot-tara mō dokoka e it-te shimai-mashita.** Just now I thought an aeroplane was flying, but it has already disappeared.

Mizu ga nagare-te iru (or **oru**). Water is flowing.

Hashi-te iru (or **oru**) **densha ga jū-dai hodo ari-mashita.** There were about ten street cars running.

Gakkō de wa ku-ji kara shiki ga hajimat-te i-(or **ori**) **mashita.** At school the ceremony began at nine o'clock.

Shigoto ga naku-te ason-de i-te(or **ot-te**) **wa kurashi ga tachi-masen.** Being without work and idle I (he) cannot make a living.

Examples of Auxiliary Verbs of Continued State:

Fune ga ukan-de i-masu (or **ori-masu**). A boat is floating.

Isu ga koware-te iru (or **oru**). The chair is broken.

Hyaku-yen areba seikatsuhi dake wa tari-te i-mashō (or **ori-mashō**). One hundred yen a month will be enough for living expenses only.

Konna ni nigot-te iru (or **oru**) **mizu wa inryō ni wa nari-masen.** Such muddy water as this will not do for drinking water.

Yabure-te i-masu (or **ori-masu**) **kara shūzen ni dashi-te kudasai.** As this is torn, please send it for repair.

58. A distinction between Continued Action and Continued State as expressed by Intransitive Verbs seems to be impossible since **iru** and **oru** are used in both cases. For instance, if one says, **Mizu ga kobore-te i-masu,** The water is spilling over (overflowing), it is ordinarily understood to mean that the action of water spilling-over has already been completed, and

that spilled-over water is there. At the same time, however, the sentence can also mean that the action of water spilling-over has been started, is still going on, and will continue. However, a distinction can be made naturally by considering the context.

59. There is still another time division or class of Auxiliary Verbs, expressed by **shimau,** finish, called Auxiliary Verbs of the Perfect Tense, used to denote the completion of an action:

Watakushi wa mō shinbun wo yon-de shimai-mashita. I have already finished reading the newspaper.

Mō yūhan wo sumashi-te shimai-mashita. I have already finished supper.

Atsumari ga sume-ba mina o-kaeri ni nat-te shimai-masu. When the meeting ends everybody goes home.

Hayaku agara-nai to aisukuriimu ga toke-te shimai-masu. If you do not eat quickly, the ice-cream will all melt.

San-ji made ni shigoto wo shi-te shimai-mashō. I shall (or let us) finish the work by three o'clock.

60. **Toki no Kanryō no Jodōshi** (時ノ完了ノ助動詞), Auxiliary Verbs of the Perfect Tense or Completed Action, are used in both Affirmative and Negative Forms. The above examples are Affirmative; the following are Negative:

Watakushi wa mada shinbun wo yon-de shimai-masen. I have not yet finished reading the newspapers.

Mada yūhan wo sumashi-te shimai-masen. I (we) have not yet finished supper.

Atsumari ga sun-de mo mina o-kaeri ni nat-te shimai-masen. Even though the meeting is over, all have not gone home.

Aisukuriimu wa sō sugu ni wa toke-te shimai-masen yo. Ice-cream will not melt so quickly.

San-ji made ni wa shigoto wo shi-te shimawa-nai deshō. I(or we) shall not finish the work by three o'clock.

61. Auxiliary Verbs of the Perfect Tense have Past, Present, and Future Forms as shown in the following table, illustrated by **yomu,** read, a Four Row Inflection Verb, and **kieru,** vanish, a One Row Inflection Verb:

TABLE SHOWING AUXILIARY VERBS OF THE PERFECT TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE FORMS

Yomu (讀む) read		**Kieru** (消える) vanish	
	Past Form		
yon-de	**shimai-mashita** **shimat-ta**	**kie-te**	**shimai-mashita** **shimat-ta**
	Present Form		
yo	**mi-mashita** **n-da**	**kie**	**mashita** **ta**
	Future Form		
yon-de	**shimai-mashō** **shima-ō**	**kie-te**	**shimai-mashō** **shima-ō**

NEGATIVE FORMS

	Past Form		
yon-de	**shimai-masen-deshita** **shimawa-nai-deshita** **shimawa-nanda**	**kie-te**	**shimai-masen-deshita** **shimawa-nai-deshita** **shimawa-nanda**
	Present Form		
yo	**mi-masen-deshita** **ma-nan-da**	**kie-te**	**shimai-masen** **shimawa-nai** **shimawa-n**
	Future Form		
yon-de	**shimai-masen-deshō** **shimawa-nai-deshō** **shimawa-n-deshō**	**kie**	**masen-deshita** **nan-da**

62. The Past and Future Forms of the Auxiliary Verbs of the Perfect Tense can be distinguished from other Auxiliary Verbs of Time, but the Present Form of the Perfect Tense is exactly the same as the Past Form of other Auxiliary Verbs of Time. This is because the time difference between the Present and the Past is a matter of only a second. If one says, **Kisha ga tsuki-mashita,** The train has arrived, the sentence may mean either that the train has just arrived, which requires the Present Form of the Perfect Tense, or it may mean that it arrived one minute ago, which requires the Past Form

of Time. This delicate time distinction is often made by the use of Adverbs: **Ima kisha ga tsuki-mashita,** The train has just arrived, is the Present Form of the Perfect Tense. **Sakki kisha ga tsuki-mashita,** The train arrived a little while ago, is the Past Form of Time.

HONORIFIC AUXILIARY VERBS

63. As has already been explained (See Verbs), there are some Verbs which in themselves express actions in polite or honorific forms. Ordinary Verbs may also express actions politely, but unlike the kind of Verbs mentioned above they always need the help of special Auxiliary Verbs, which are called Honorific Auxiliary Verbs (敬讓ノ助動詞).

Asu Yokohama e ika-reru sō desu. He is likely to go to Yokohama tomorrow.

Samui desu-kara shōji wo shime-rare-ta hō ga yoroshū gozai-masu. As it is cold, it will be better to close the paper doors.

Mina-san go-jōbu de ira-serare-masu ka? Are all members of your family well?

Seito no seiseki wo o-shirabe kudasai mase. Please examine the pupils' grades.

Asu no shūkai ni wa kitto shusseki shi-masu. I shall surely attend tomorrow's meeting.

In the above sentences the Honorific Auxiliary Verbs are: **re,** in **ika-re-ru**; **rare** in **shime-rare-ta**; **rare** in **irase-rare** and also **masu** in **irase-rare-masu**; **kudasai** and **mase** in **o-shirabe kudasai-mase**; and **masu** in **shusseki shi-masu.**

64. There are three kinds of Honorific Auxiliary Verbs. The first kind is used in expressing respect to the person addressed; the second kind is used by the speaker in depreciating himself; the third is used on all occasions to express actions politely. These three kinds are explained in the following sections.

65. There are several groups of Honorific Auxiliary Verbs of the first kind, used to express respect (i) to the person addressed and to his family and near friends and (ii) to persons of higher social position or rank. The first group includes

re, rare, and **sase-rare,** the same forms as the ordinary Passive Auxiliary Verbs. These forms are combined with Verbs in the forms as inflected in the First Row, as **ika,** from **iku, ira** from **iru,** etc.

Ni-ji no kisha de Kyōto e ika-re-mashita. He (they) went to Kyōto by the two o'clock train.

Sengetsu no sue kara byōin ni hait-te i-rare-masu. He has been in the hospital since the end of last month.

Mō jikan ni nari-mashita ga, mada ko-rare-masen. Although the time has already come he has not yet arrived.

Denka wa jidōsha ni mesase-rare-mashita. The Prince has gotten into the automobile.

Go-jibun de mado wo ake-sase-rare-mashita. He opened the window himself.

66. Words of the second group of Honorific Auxiliary Verbs, **nasaru, kudasaru, asobasu** are combined: (i) either with Verbs as inflected in the Second Row (as **kaki** from **kaku** and **iri** from **iru,** etc), with the Prefix **o** (お), or (ii) with Verbal Nouns with the Honorific Prefix **go** (ご). Originally **nasaru,** and **asobasu** were polite Verbs but have come to be used as Auxiliary Verbs. One example of each (which may be translated as he, they or you) is shown in the following:

Go-shiyō	**nasaru**	He uses it.
	kudasaru	He kindly uses it.
	asobasu	
Tegami wo o-kaki	**nasaru**	He writes a letter.
	kudasaru	He kindly writes me a letter.
	asobasu	

These three Honorific Auxiliary Verbs have the same inflection as Verbs. **Nasaru** and **kudasaru** have the Four Row Inflection of the **Sa** Column. These three Honorific Auxiliary Verbs, however, are combined only with Verbs of the Four Row and One Row Inflection, and not with **kuru** and **suru,** Verbs of Irregular Inflection. This is because the Irregular Verb, **kuru,** come, has a substitute polite expression, **iras-**

sharu, and **suru**, do, also has the polite substitute forms, **nasaru** and **asobasu**, which, used as Verbs, do not need the help of Auxiliary Verbs.

67. Of these three Honorific Auxiliary Verbs **nasaru, asobasu** and **kudasaru**, the first two indicate an action by the second or third person, while the third, **kudasaru,** indicates an action by the second person on behalf of the third person. In less polite expressions **nasaru** is also used in various combinations without the Honorific Prefix **o**.

Tegami wo kaki-nasai-(nasari) mashita ka? Have you written the letter?

Yoku shirabe-nasai-(nasari) masu to, jijō ga wakarimashō. When you examine it carefully you will understand.

Asu oide-nasa-re-ba iroiro o-me ni kake-masu. If you come tomorrow I shall show you many things.

Anata ga minasat-te (or **nasari-te**) **kara, watakushi mo mise-te itadaki-masu.** After you have seen it please let me see it.

Warui koto wo shi-nasaru kara, shikara-reru no desu. Because you have done something bad you get scolded.

68. The third group of Honorific Auxiliary Verbs, used to express respect to the person addressed, includes **irassharu,** and **naru,** which with the help of auxiliary words are used in combination with Verbs. In one sense this may be considered simply as a polite form of sentence construction, but both **irassharu** and **naru** are treated as Honorific Auxiliary Verbs because they are used idiomatically.

69. In the following examples **irassharu** is connected by the help of the Auxiliary Verbs **te** and **de** with Verbs as inflected in the Second Row:

Shōsetsu wo yon-de irasshai-masu. He is reading a novel.

Moshi o-taku ni irasshara-na-kere-ba o-desaki wo kii-te oi-te kudasai. If he is not at home please inquire where he has gone.

Sukoshi mat-te irasshare-ba densha ga ki-masu. If you

wait a little while the street car will come.

Sakunen kara mae no shōkai ni wa tsutome-te irrashai-masen. He has not been working at the former company since last year.

Isogashii shigoto wo shi-te irasshai-masu kara o-hima wa nai-deshō. As he is engaged in exacting work he will probably not have any leisure time.

70. In the following examples **naru** is connected by the help of the auxiliary word **ni** with Verbs as inflected in the Second Row, with the Honorific Prefix **o**, or **go**.

Mitsukoshi de o-kai ni nari-mashita. He bought it at the Mitsukoshi department store.

O-kaeri ni nat-tara chotto o-denwa wo kudasai. When (or if) he returns please call me by phone.

Donata ka kasa wo o-wasure ni nari-mashita ne. Somebody has forgotten his umbrella.

Dandan eraku o-nari ni narō to omoi-masu. I think he (or you) will eventually become a great man.

Raigetsu no tō-ka ni, Yokohama wo go-shuppatsu ni naru sō desu. I understand that he will sail from Yokohama on the tenth of next month.

71. The second kind of Honorific Auxiliary Verbs, used to depreciate the first person, includes **itasu**, **mōsu**, **mōshiageru** and **tsukamatsuru**, all of which were originally Verbs of Humility. However, they serve as Auxiliary Verbs in that they help other Verbs to express politeness. They are inflected in the same way as Verbs. Their forms are shown in the following:

Yūhan ni o-kyaku-sama wo o-maneki-	
itashi-masu	
mōshi-masu	I invite guests to supper.
mōshiage-masu	
tsukamatsuri-masu	
Go-shōkai-	
itashi-masu	
mōshi-masu	I shall introduce you.
mōshiage-masu	
tsukamatsuri-masu	

Kochira kara o-tazune-
itashi-masu
mōshi-masu I shall call on you.
mōshiage-masu
tsukamatsuri-masu

72. The third kind of Honorific Auxiliary Verbs consists of **masu,** as commonly used for the polite expression of any action, in connection with Verbs as inflected in the Second Row. The following examples represent the polite forms of **tobu,** fly, **aku,** open, **yasumu,** rest, **okiru,** get up, **kuru,** come and **gozaru,** be, combined with the Honorific Auxiliary Verb **masu**:

Tori ga tobi-masu. Birds fly.

Hitoride ni densha no tobira ga aki-masu. The doors of the electric car open automatically.

Namakemono de, ame ga fure-ba kitto yasumi-masu. As he is lazy he is sure to rest when it rains.

Watakushi wa mai asa go-ji ni oki-masu. I get up at five o'clock every morning.

Kodomo ga ki-masu. A child is coming.

Sayō de gozai-masu. Yes, I understand.

Masu is also used to complete polite expressions when combined with Honorific Auxiliary Verbs, as explained in the previous sections. This use of **masu** is shown in the following sentences:

Yoma-re-masu (polite form of **yoma-re-ru**). He reads books.

Benkyō se-rare-masu (polite form of **se-rare-ru**). He studies.

Asobasa-re-masu (polite form of **asoba-su**). He will do it (or, He does it).

Kudasa-re-masu (polite form of **kudasa-ru**). He will give it to me.

Irasshai-masu (polite form of **irassha-ru**). He will come.

Oide ni narare-masu (polite form of **na-ru**). He will become.

Itashi-masu (polite form of **ita-su**). I shall do it.

Mōshi-masu (polite form of **mō-su**). I shall say it.

Mōshiage-masu (polite form of **mōshiage-ru**). I shall say (it).

Tsukamatsuri-masu (polite form of **tsukamatsu-ru**). I shall count it an honor to do (it).

In daily conversation, the simple form of inflected Verbs may be used without **masu**, except at the end of the sentence, where **masu** should always be used. **Atarashii zasshi wo kat-te ki-mashi-te omoshiro sō ni yon-de i-masu.** He bought a new magazine and seems to be reading it with keen interest. In this sentence **mashi**, in **ki-mashi-te**, may be omitted, the form becoming **kat-te ki-te**, but the **masu** in **i-masu**, which is at the end of the sentence, is always necessary. The form **iru**, in such cases is not ordinarily used in conversation.

73. The inflection of the final syllable of **masu** is as follows:

Ma { **se-(nu)**, **shi(te)**, **su**, **sure-(ba)** }

Watakushi wa Nikkō e wa iki-mase-nu. I am not going to Nikkō. The syllable **nu** in **mase-nu** usually changes into **n**, becoming **masen.** The negative form **nai**, which may be used with Verbs or with other Auxiliary Verbs can not be used with **masu.**

Watakushi wa myōasa hayaku tachi-mashi-te Kōbe e mairi-masu. I shall leave for Kōbe early tomorrow morning.

Ku-ji ni tachi-mashi-tara nan-ji ni Kyōto e tsuki-masu ka? If I leave at nine o'clock what time shall I reach Kyōto?

Watakushi wa san-nen mae ni Nippon e ki-mashita. I came to Japan three years ago.

Beikoku e tsuki-mashi-te sugu ni tegami wo sashiage-masu. As soon as I reach America I shall write you a letter.

O-namae wa kii-te i-masu ga, mada o-me ni kakat-ta koto wa gozai-masen. I have heard his name before but have never yet met him.

O-ide kudasai-masu-nara go-annai mōshiage-masu. I

shall guide you around if you come.

Uketamawari-masu-re-ba sakigoro kara go-nyūin ni natte iru sō de gozai-masu. From what I hear I judge that he has been in the hospital for some little while.

74. The use of **masu** is, indeed, general and inclusive. It is never omitted from the final Verb in any kind of conversation. Therefore all explanations in this Grammar have been written with the Verb form ending in **masu,** as **yuki-masu,** instead of the usual dictionary form **yuku,** as the basis. Since this verb form is the form commonly used in conversation, the writer believes this explanation of the Verbs will be more easily understood.

75. The **Meirei Jodōshi** (命令助動詞), Imperative Auxiliary Verbs, the last kind in this classification, are represented by **ike, oki-yo, koi,** and **se-yo,** as shown in the following examples:

Achira e ike. Go over there.
Hayaku oki-yo. Get up early.
Chotto ko-i. Come here a minute.
Yoku benkyō se-yo. See that you study diligently.

76. When Imperative Auxiliary Verbs are connected with Verbs, the forms vary according to the inflection of the related Verbs. The Negative is formed by the use of **na.** The following Table shows both the Affirmative and Negative Forms of the Imperative Auxiliary Verbs:

TABLE SHOWING IMPERATIVE AUXILIARY VERBS

AFFIRMATIVE FORMS	NEGATIVE FORMS
Four Row-Inflection	
Hon wo yome. Read the book.	**Hon wo yo-mu-na.** Do not read the book.
One Row Inflection	
To wo ake-yo. Open the door.	**To wo ake-ru-na.** Do not open the door.

Irregular Inflection
Ka Line

.ochira e ko-i.	**Kochira e kuru-na**
Come here.	Do not come here.

Sa Line

Sugu ni se-yo (shi-ro)	**Sugu ni su-ru-na.**
Do it at once.	Do not do it at once.

Of the above Imperative Auxiliary Verbs the form **yo** is used with Verbs of either the **Sa** Column One Row Inflection, or with the Irregular Verb, **suru.**

77. The following table, using the Verb **yomu,** read, shows how Honorific Auxiliary Verbs are used as Imperative Auxiliary Verbs in polite expressions.

TABLE SHOWING USES OF HONORIFIC IMPERATIVE AUXILIARY VERBS

AFFIRMATIVE FORMS	NEGATIVE FORMS
Yomi-nasai	**Yomi-nasaru-na**
Yon-de(Yomi-te) kudasai	**Yon-de(Yomite) kudasaru-na**
Yon-de(Yomite) irasshai	**Yon-de(Yomite) irassharu-na**

Dōzo kono kuruma ni o-nori-nasai. Please get into this **kuruma** (or car).

Dōzo asu no asa ku-ji ni ki-te kudasai. Please come at nine o'clock tomorrow morning.

Furidashi-mashita kara kono kasa wo mot-te irasshai. As it has started to rain, please take this umbrella.

Sonna hon wo o-yomi-nasaru-na. Please do not read such a book as that.

Go-shimpai wo shi-te kudasaru-na. Please do not be worried.

78. When **masu** is connected with Honorific Verbs or Honorific Auxiliary Verbs, the **su** in **masu** may change to **se** or **shi,** becoming **ma-se** or **ma-shi** in Affirmatives. In Negatives, **na** is added to **masu,** the Negative Imperative Form becoming **masu-na.**

Dōzo o-yasumi nasai-mase (mashi). Please have a rest.

Go-yukkuri nasat-te irasshai-mase(mashi). Please make yourself at home and do not be in a hurry.

Sonna ni go-enryo nasai-masu-na. Please do not hesitate so much.

Osoku made ason-de irasshai-masu-na. Please do not play (stay out) too late.

79. There is still one more Honorific Auxiliary Verb. This is **tamō.** When it is used with Verbs, it is connected with the Verb forms as inflected in the Second Row. The form is then, **yomi-tamae,** Please read; **Kochira e ki-tamae,** Please come here, etc. However, this use in conversation is limited to men, especially students. **Tamō** is also used as an Imperative Honorific Auxiliary Verb. The negative form of **tamō** is **tamō-na.** The same form, **tamō,** may also be used in prayer, and in speaking of the members of the Imperial Family.

IX. JOSHI (助詞)—POSTPOSITIONS

1. **Joshi**, Postpositions, or **Te-ni-o-ha** (てにをは), have no meaning in themselves, but by their position help to complete the sentence. They are one kind of **Joji**, Auxiliary Words.

2. In the following sentences, **wo** in **o-cha wo, te** in **dashi-te, de** in **jidōsha de, ni** in **o-kaeri ni** and **ga** in **utsukushii hana ga,** are **Joshi,** Postpositions:

O-cha wo dashi-te kudasai. Please give us some tea

Jidōsha de o-kaeri ni nari-mashita. He returned by automobile.

Utsukushii hana ga saki-mashita. Beautiful flowers have blossomed out.

3. The Postpositions, with varied functions, may be placed between **Taigen,** Nondeclinable Words, and **Yōgen,** Declinable Words, or between **Yōgen** and Auxiliary Words, or between Auxiliary Words. Sometimes two are used in combination.

4. In the expression, **Sakura no hana,** Cherry blossoms, the **Joshi**, Postposition, is between the two **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Words, **sakura** and **hana.** In the sentence, **Kisha ga tsuki-mashita,** The train has arrived, **ga,** a **Joshi**, Postposition, is placed between the **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Word, **Kisha** and the **Yōgen**, Declinable Word, **tsuku**, arrive. If we say **Kisha ni not-te Yokohama e mairi-mashita,** I went to Yokohama by train, the positions of the **Joshi**, are as follows:

Kisha (Nondeclinable Word) **ni** (Postposition) **not-** (Declinable Word) **te** (Postposition) **Yokohama** (Nondeclinable Word) **e** (Postposition) **mairi-mashita** (Declinable Word).

In the sentence, **Anata wa watakushi yori o-wakai deshō,** You are younger than I, aren't you? the positions of the Postpositions are:

Anata (Nondeclinable Word) **wa** (Postposition) **watakushi** (Nondeclinable Word) **yori** (Postposition) **o-** (Pre-

fix) **wakai** (Declinable Word) **deshō** (Auxiliary Word).

5. The number of **Joshi**, Postpositions, is very large and concerning them scholars are not in agreement, but the **Joshi** in common use are as follows:

DIFFERENT USES OF POSTPOSITIONS

1 **Ga** (が)

6. **Ga** is used in seven different ways. The first use is with the Subject or the Subjective Part of the sentence.

Hon ga hondana ni narabe-te ari-masu. The books are arranged on the book-shelf.

Ano ki no eda ni kotori ga saezut-te i-masu. A little bird is singing on the branch of that tree.

Sakura no hana ga ichiban utsukushii to omoi-masu. I think cherry blossoms are the most beautiful.

Gakkō e yuku no ga watashi no tsutome desu. My duty (work) is to go to school.

7. The second use of **ga** is at the end of a clause closely related to the second and main clause in the sentence.

Machi e yuki-masu ga, nanika go-yō ga ari-masu ka? I am going to town, can I do anything for you?

Kore de shitsurei itashi-masu ga, izure mata o-ukagai itashi-masu. I must be going now, but shall call on you again.

Watashi mo mairi-masu ga, anata mo irasshai-masu ka? I am going, but are you not going also?

Taihen kumot-te ki-mashita ga, kore de wa ame ni naru deshō .It is getting very cloudy, and it may rain.

Taisō utsukushii hana desu ga, nanto iu hana de gozai-mashō. This is a very beautiful flower, I wonder what its name is.

8. The third use of **ga** is when the meaning of the second part of the sentence is contrary to that of the first part.

Kii-te miru ga, wakara-nai darō. I shall inquire, but may not understand.

Tenki wa hare-ta ga, kaze ga de-te ki-mashita. The sky is clear, but the wind has risen.

O-kane wo mōke-tai ga, fukeiki de komari-masu. I should like to make money, but am troubled by the depression.

Sukoshi wa dase-mashō ga, takusan wa komari-masu. I can give something but not very much.

Ashita no kisha de tsuki-masu ga, sugu ni Sendai e tachi-masu. He will arrive here on the morning train tomorrow, but will leave for Sendai immediately.

9. The fourth use of **ga** is with words supplementing the meaning of the sentence. In the following examples, the words followed by **ga** express the object of actions, and as a rule are followed by **wo**, the common sign of the Objective Case, but in these sentences are followed by **ga**.

Inu wa mizu ga nomi-taku-te kawagishi e hashit-te iki-mashita. The dog being thirsty ran to the river-side (for a drink of water).

Watashi wa aisukuriimu ga suki desu. I like ice cream.

Ano kata wa Nippongo ga o-hanashi ni nare-nai yō desu. Apparently that person cannot speak Japanese.

Konna yasashii no ga yome-naku-te dō shi-masu. What will you do if you can't read anything so easy as this?

Watashi wa ittai gaikokugo ga kirai nano deshi-te ne. I dislike all foreign languages.

10. The fifth use of **ga**, chiefly with Pronouns, is with words which sharply distinguish one thing from another.

Kore ga anata no hon desu ka? Is this your book?

Watakushi ga kanete o-sewasama ni nat-te ori-masu Ichirō no chichi de gozai-masu. I am the father of Ichirō to whom you have been very kind.

Iroiro warui koto mo ari-masu ga, sore ga ichiban komaru koto nano desu. There are many bad (or harmful) things, but this is the most distressing of all.

Koko ga ichiban taisetsu-na yōten desu. This is the most important point.

Ano kata ga Yamashita-san no o-jōsan desu-ka? Is that the daughter of Mr. Yamashita?

Wa is generally used instead of **ga** in the explanatory description of the Subject, as in **Kore wa anata no hon desu ka?** Is this your book? But in the above case, the query is as to one particular book among many, so **ga** must be used.

11. The sixth use of **ga** is to limit ownership.

Kimi ga yo. The reign of the Emperor.
Wa ga kuni. My country.
Wa ga ie. My house.
Mei ga hama. The beach of Mei.

12. The seventh use of **ga** is when two suppositional phrases of contrary meaning are followed by a clause which expresses the determination or the purpose of the speaker.

Tō karō ga chika karō ga, tonikaku it-te mi-mashō. Whether it's far or near I'll go anyway.

Haya karō ga oso karō ga, zehi kao dake wa dashi-te kure to iu no desu. Whether early or late, I am urged to be present (show my face) by all means.

Yomō ga yomu-mai ga, okut-te yari sae sure-ba ii no desu. Whether he reads it or not, it will be a good thing to send it to him anyway.

Kikō ga kiku-mai ga, hanasu tsumori desu. Whether the audience will listen to me or not, I intend to speak anyway.

Hatarai-te iyō ga, ason-de iyō ga, watakushi wa issai kamai-masen. Whether he is working or idling I don't care at all.

13. **Ga** is also used to mark out an important word which is repeated for emphasis.

Nen ga nen jū isogashiku-te yasumu hima mo ari-masen. I am so busy all year round that I have no time for rest.

Kyō ga kyō made sukoshi mo shiri-masen deshita. I did not know anything about it until this very day.

Ze ga hi demo kono koto dake wa o-kikiire kudasai.

Whether you approve or disapprove, I beg you to give your consent to this.

Kono hyaku yen ga hyaku yen wo mina anata no hō de tsukaware-te wa watashi no hō ga komari-masu. If you yourself use up this hundred **yen**, I shall be in great trouble.

Kodomo ga inaku-nat-ta node o-kāsan wa ki ga ki de wa ari-masen. Because the child is missing the mother has absolutely no spirit left in her.

These sentences may properly be regarded as illustrating the customary usage of words.

2. No (の)

14. The first use of **no** is to limit ownership (persons) or attachment (things).

Sore wa watakushi no hon desu. This is my book.

Mōfu (kettō) no nedan wo kii-te kudasai. Please ask the price of (the) blankets.

Watakushi no taku wa Tōkyō no inaka desu ga, kōtsū ga benri desu kara betsu ni fuben wa ari-masen. My house is in the suburbs of Tōkyō, but I do not feel any inconvenience, as the transportation facilities are good.

Kyōto yuki no kisha ga deta bakari no tokoro deshita. The train for Kyōto had just left.

Gojū-nen zen no Nippon no arisama wa konnichi no Nipponjin ni wa sōzō mo deki-nai deshō. Japanese people today cannot imagine the condition of the Japan of fifty years ago.

15. In the second use of **no**, similar to one use of **ga**, the word is placed between the Subject and a modifying Verb or Adjective.

Kodomo no ason-de iru heya. The room where the children are playing.

Sakanaya no mot-te ki-ta kanjōgaki wo ichido shirabe-te kudasai. Please examine the bill brought by the fish-

monger.

Ki no kii-ta koto wo osshai-masu. You say smart things.

Toshiyori no iu koto wa wakai mono ni wa ki ni iri-masen. The young people do not appreciate what the old people say.

Hana no takai, me no kubon-da, sei no hikui otoko deshi-ta. He was a man with high nose, hollow eyes and short stature.

16. The third use of **no** is to replace a **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Word.

Ichi-yen gurai no ga ari-masu ka? Do you have one worth about one yen?

Yasui no ga at-tara futatsu mittsu kat-te ki-te kudasai. If there are any cheap ones please buy two or three and bring to me.

Mada oide ni nat-ta koto ga ari-masen no nara, watashi ga annai itashi-mashō. If you have never been to the place, I shall guide you.

Konna ni shizuka de kūki no ii no ga, byōki no tame ni yoroshii to omoi-masu. I think these quiet surroundings and the pure air will be good for your health.

Kono kireina no wa takai deshō. This pretty one is more expensive, isn't it?

17. The fourth use of **no** is in enumeration.

Miru no minai no to it-te nakanaka kimari-masen. We cannot decide yet as some say they wish to see it and some say they do not.

Yuku no yuka-nai no to it-te i-mashita ga, tōtō yuku koto ni narimashita. After much discussion, some saying they wished to go and some that they would not go, we have at last decided to go.

Bōshi no kasa no to zeitaku-na mono bakari kau no desu kara ikura o-kane ga at-temo, tari wa itashi-masen. He always buys expensive hats, umbrellas and so on, so no matter how much money he has, it will not be enough.

Hayai no osoi no to it-te iru uchi ni, jikan ga sugi-te shi-mai-mashita. While discussing whether it is too early or too late the time has flown.

18. There is still another very common use of **no**, somewhat similar to the fourth use given above. The affirmative and negative form of the same word are used in succession, but the emphasis is put on the former.

Omoshiroi no omoshiroku-nai no to it-temo, anna katsudō wa mita koto wa ari-masen. Whatever may be said about its being interesting or uninteresting I have never seen such a movie.

Yake-ta no yake-nai not-te, marude nohara ni nat-te shi-mai-mashita. The fire raged so much that the place has become like an open field.

Furu no fura-nai not-te, sokora-jū ōumi no yō ni nari-mashita. It rained so much that as far as we can see the place has become like a great sea.

Kuru no konai not-te kaijō wo akeru to, nijikan amari wa hikkiri nashi ni hait-te ki-mashita. So many people came that after the opening of the hall they constantly poured in for about two hours.

Taberu no tabenai not-te ano o-sara wo hitori de minna tairage-mashita yo. He is such a glutton that he finished that dish all by himself.

In the first sentence, **omoshiroi no omoshiroku nai no to it-te,** the emphasis is placed on **omoshiroi,** implying that it was very interesting. **Yaketa no yake-nai no,** means the fire burned furiously. **Furu no fura-nai no** means a very heavy rain. **Kuru no konai no** means that people came in very large numbers and **taberu no tabenai no** means the person ate very much.

3. Ni (に)

19. The seven uses of **ni** will be explained in the following sections. The first use is to indicate the positions of things named.

Nishinomiya wa Ōsaka to Kōbe no aida ni ari-masu.

Nishinomiya is located between Ōsaka and Kōbe.

Engawa ni nekoron-de shōsetsu wo yomi-mashita. I read a novel lying on the veranda.

Petero no koto ga Seisho no doko ni kai-te ari-masu ka? In what part of the Bible is the account of St. Peter written?

Chō ga kumo no su ni hikkakat-ta. A butterfly was caught in a spider's web.

Kimono ni doro ga hanetsui-ta. Mud has been splashed on the dress.

20. The second use of **ni** is with words defining more clearly the meaning of the sentence.

Kunimoto no haha ni tegami wo kaki-mashita. I have written a letter to mother at home.

Watakushi wa kyonen no Kugatsu ni mairi-mashita. I came here last September.

Yūhan ni koi to iware-temo isogashiku-te sono hima ga ari-masen. Even though I have been invited for supper, I am so busy that I have no time to go.

Iyesu no deshi ni Yakobu to iu hito ga ari-mashita. Among the diciples of Jesus there was a man named James.

21. The third use of **ni** is to express the meaning of "in addition to."

Hagaki ni kitte wo kai-mashita. I have bought postcards as well as stamps.

Jū-go ni jū-hachi desu kara san-jū-san ni nari-masu. As it is fifteen plus eighteen the sum is thirty-three.

Sakuban kara ame ni kaze ga dandan hageshiku nari-mashita. Since last evening the rain and wind have gradually become more furious.

Kokonotsu ni muttsu de gozai-mashi-te, shita no wa mada yōchien de gozai-masu. Our children are nine and six, and the younger one is still in the kindergarten.

"Shimbun, zasshi! biiru ni masamune!" to yobiuri wo shi-te i-mashita. They were calling out, "Newspapers and

magazines! Beer and **sake(masamune)**".

22. The fourth use of **ni** is to express an inclusive meaning.

Ni-jikan ni jū-go-fun no yasumi ga ari-masu. There is a fifteen minutes rest period in every two hours.

Ichi nen ni jū-ni-ka-getsu ari-masu. There are twelve months in one year.

Ringo wo kai-mashita ga, tō ni hitotsu wa kusat-te i-mashita. I bought some apples, but one in ten were rotten.

Tsuki ni tō-ka wa Ōsaka ni i-masu. Ten days in each month I am in Ōsaka.

23. The fifth use of **ni**, often in combination with **no**, as **noni**, is to introduce a second expression with a meaning contrary to that of the first part.

Kiki mo shi-nai noni, ira-zaru kuchi wo dasu. Though his opinion is unsought, he interferes unnecessarily.

Yome mo shi-nai noni, eiji shinbun wo mot-te arui-te i-masu. Even though he cannot read it, he walks about carrying an English newspaper.

Kawa-nai to it-te ki-te iru noni, nedan wo kiku hitsuyō wa nai deshō. As I have told them I would not buy it, it isn't necessary to ask the price.

San-ji ni noru to iu noni, mada guzuguzu shi-te i-masu ga maniawa-nai desho. Though he says he is taking the three o'clock train, he still lingers, and will he be on time?

Kesa kara mat-te iru noni, mada oide ni nari-masen. Though I have been waiting for him since morning, he has not come yet.

24. The sixth use of **ni** is to indicate purpose. As in the preceding section, the meaning is the same in combination with **no**, as **noni**. This use of **ni** is generally limited to Verbs; it is not extended to Verbal Nouns.

Ji wo kaku noni fude ga iri-masu. For writing characters a writing brush is needed.

Kaidō wo tateru noni o-kane ga iru-node, komat-te i-

masu. As we need money to build the church, we are in a dilemma.

Chikagoro wa byōki wo naosu noni amari kusuri wo tsukawa-naku nari-mashita. The recent tendency in curing disease is to use medicine sparingly.

Ryōri ni tsukau bata wo ik-kin tot-te kudasai. Please get me a pound of butter for cooking.

Betsu ni yō mo nai no desu ga, dōmo asobu no ni isogashi-ku-te komari-mashita. Though I have nothing special to do, I am troubled because I am so busy amusing myself.

25. The seventh use of **ni** is to give emphasis by repetition.

Ame ga furi ni fut-te nakanaka yami-masen. The rain is literally pouring down and there is no sign of its stopping.

Kaze ga fuki ni fui-te ōkina ki wo taoshi-mashita. The fierce wind blew down a huge tree.

Asa kara ban made hataraki ni hatarai-te tōtō byōki ni nari-mashita. From morning till night every day he worked so hard that at last he became ill.

Nayami ni nayan-de tōtō taore-te shimai-mashita. With trouble on trouble he finally broke down.

Mendō ni mendō wo shitsukushi-mashita no desu yo. I have taken every possible care (in looking after him).

4. Wo (を)

26. The three uses of **wo** will next be explained. The first is related to action, as the object of a Transitive Verb.

Sono hon to chōmen wo okut-te kudasai. Please send me those books and notebooks.

Tegami wo kai-te oki-mashita kara, machi e yuku tsuide ni yūbin ni ire-te kudasai. When you go out on the street, please mail this letter I have just written.

Kodomo ga inu wo hashira-se-te ason-de i-masu. The child is playing with the dog, letting it run about.

Saburō wo kuruma ni nose, Tarō wo aruka-se-te yuki-

mashita. Putting Saburō into a **jinrikisha**, we went with Tarō walking.

Anata no go-kenkyū ni nat-ta no wo kantan ni o-hanashi kudasare-tara ikaga deshō. How about speaking briefly on the results of your study?

27. The second use of **wo** is to indicate the place of the actions named.

Hikōki ga sora wo ton-de ki-mashita. An airplane came flying in the sky.

Hashi wo watat-te mukō gawa no hiroi michi ni de-mashita. After crossing the bridge I came out into the wide road on the opposite side.

Ano yokochō wo nuke-te denshamichi e deru to, kado kara san-gen-me desu. Going out at that side street, it is the third house from the corner on the tram-car street.

Kono kinjo wo o-tōri ni nare-ba zehi o-tachiyori kudasai. If you are passing through this neighborhood please stop at our house.

Shadō wo arui-te wa ike-masen. It is not permitted to walk on the car track.

28. The third use of **wo** is in the sense of "from."

Nikai wo ori-mashita. He came down from the second story.

Heya no iriguchi wo deru to chōdo jū-ni-ji wo uchi-mashita. Just as I left the room, the clock struck twelve.

Sukoshi hayaku uchi wo de-te, tochū de kaimono wo ita-shi-mashō. Let us leave the house a little early and do some shopping on the way.

Ni-gatsu no tō-ka ni Beikoku wo tachi-mashita. On February 10th he left the United States.

Yokohama ni tsui-te fune wo oriru to, jidōsha ga ki-te mat-te i-mashita. Landing from the ship on arrival at Yokohama, an automobile was waiting (for us).

5. To (と)

29. Of the four uses of **to**, the first is in enumeration.

Shiroi kami to akai empitsu ga tsukue no ue ni ari-masu. There are sheets of white paper and a red pencil on the desk.

Tomato to jagaimo wo san-byaku-me zutsu kat-te oi-te kudasai. Please buy me three hundred **me** each of tomatoes and potatoes.

Yuki to kaeri de, san-ji-kan wa kakari-masu. To go and return takes about three hours.

Kyō wa hiru to ban wa, jimusho de sumase-masu kara shitaku wa iri-masen. Today I shall have both lunch and supper at my office and so please do not prepare anything for me.

Asa to ban to de wa, ichi-jikan ijō hi ga nobi-mashita. Counting morning and evening, the day has lengthened more than one hour.

30. The second use of **to** is to follow and point out a Noun, Phrase or Clause as the object of a Verb of speaking or thinking.

O-hana wa "hai" to kotae-te, oku-sama no heya e mairi-mashita. O-hana said "hai" (yes) and went to her mistress's room.

Go-byōki to kii-te sassoku o-mimai ni mairi-mashita. On hearing that you were ill, I came immediately to see you.

Go-jū-yen to it-te mo, takaku wa nai-deshō. I think it will not be too high to price it at fifty yen.

Bōshi to ii, kutsu to ii, nakanaka haikara desu ne. He is very smart, with hat, shoes and all, isn't he?

Konnani michi ga warui no desu kara yohodo fut-ta to mie-masu ne. Judging from these bad roads it must have rained a great deal.

31. The third use of **to** is to indicate the other party in a conversation or other relationship.

Nakayama-san to hanashi wo shi-te i-masu. I am talking

with Mr. Nakayama.

Sono koto nara, bokushi to go-sōdan kudasai. If it is regarding that question please consult the pastor.

Shingaku mondai ni tsuite tomodachi to giron wo itashi-mashita. I argued with a friend about theological questions.

Roshiya to sensō wo shi-ta no wa, mo haya san-jū-nen no mukashi ni nari-mashita. It has already been thirty years since we fought the war with Russia.

Hito to no majiwari wa, shinsetsu ga dai-ichi desu. In relations with people the most important thing is kindness.

32. The fourth use of **to** is to indicate the connection between designated events.

Mado wo akeru to, samui desu yo. If you open the window it will be cold.

Watakushi ga teishaba e mairi-masu to, soko e Yoshida-san mo oide ni nari-mashita. As soon as I arrived at the station, Mr. Yoshida also came there.

Sonna itazura wo suru to, o-kāsan ni shikara-re masu yo. If you do such mischief you will be scolded by your mother.

Jū-nen mo iru to, Nihon no hō ga yoku nari-masu. If you live here ten years you will come to like Japan better.

O-kane wo motsu to, sugu ni tsukai-taku nari-masu. As soon as I get money I wish to spend it.

6. E (へ)

33. Of the two uses of **e** the first is to indicate direction of motion.

Myōnichi gogo no kyūkō de, Ōsaka e tachi-masu. I am starting for Ōsaka on the express train tomorrow afternoon.

Sono tokei wo kochira e yokoshi-te kudasai. Please send that watch here.

Nagoya e yuku kisha to, Ōsaka e yuku kisha ga, go-fun chigai de de-masu. The trains for Nagoya and for

Ōsaka start five minutes apart.

Kochira e mairi-masu toki ni wa umi ga taihen are-te konnan itashi-mashita. When we came here the sea was very rough, so we had a difficult voyage.

Kore kara mata achira kochira e yori-masu kara, taku e kaeru no wa nan-ji goro ni naru ka wakari-masen. As I am going to stop at several other places I cannot tell when I shall be back home.

34. In many cases **e** and **ni** are incorrectly used in the same sense. In some cases this is not entirely wrong, but there is a clear distinction between these two. **E** indicates motion or direction, while **ni** indicates position. Therefore the sentence, **Uchi e kaeri-masu,** I am going home, means that the speaker has direction of motion in mind, while, **Uchi ni kaeri-masu,** I am going home, implies that the speaker has his returned position in mind. Thus, **Tokei wo tsukue no ue ni oi-te kudasai,** and **Tokei wo tsukue no ue e oi-te kudasai,** both mean, Please put that watch on the desk. They seem to express exactly the same thing. Strictly speaking, however, the former, with **ni** indicates the position where the watch is to be placed, while the latter, with **e**, indicates the direction which the watch is to take. This distinction may seem like hair-splitting, but care must be taken in using such sentences as the following: **Ashita Tōkyō ni o-ide ni nari-masu ka?** and **Ashita Tōkyō e o-ide ni nari-masu ka?** Will you be in Tōkyō tomorrow? The former in Japanese clearly indicates position, the latter direction of motion. In Japanese, **o-ide ni nari-masu,** is an honorific expression for both **iru**, be, and **iku**, go. Therefore special care must be given to the use of **ni** and **e.**

35. The second use of **e** is to indicate the aim or objective of an action.

Anata no chōmen wo tsukue no ue e oki-mashita. I placed your notebook on the desk.

Tomodachi e tegami wo dashi-mashita. I have sent a letter to my friend.

Ichi-ichi tatan-de jōbukuro e ire-te kudasai. Please fold

them separately and put them into the envelopes.

Atama e kutsu wo hai-te ashi e bōshi wo kaburu hito wa ari-masen. Nobody wears shoes on his head and a hat on his feet.

Mina-sama e yoroshiku o-tsutae kudasai-mase. Please remember me to everybody.

7. Kara (から)) and Made (まで)

36. The uses of **kara** and **made** should be carefully noted. **Kara** indicates the starting point or beginning in time or place, and **made** the end of an action.

Kurai uchi kara oki-te yoku hataraki-masu. Getting up while it is still dark he works very hard.

Fukuoka kara okut-te ki-mashita. This has been sent from Fukuoka.

Ashita no gogo ni-ji kara reikai wo hiraki-masu. A regular meeting will be held from two o'clock tomorrow afternoon.

Kore kara ga omoshirō gozai-masu. From now on it is going to be interesting.

Hi wa higashi kara ide, nishi e iru. The sun rises in (from) the East and sets in the West.

Atama kara o-kotowari da to iu no desu. I hear he has turned it down flatly.

Yokohama kara Hodogaya made aruki-mashita. I walked from Yokohama to Hodogaya.

Watakushi wa Ōmori made mairi-masu ga, anata wa dochira made? I am going as far as Ōmori, how far are you going?

Sore hodo made ni waru-ku osshara-naku-te mo yoroshii deshō. It will be well not to speak so badly about it.

Inochi made nagedashi-te kono shigoto ni kakat-ta no desu. He has risked even his life to begin this work.

8. Yori (より)

37. The **Joshi**, Postposition, **yori** is used to indicate the object of a comparison.

Watakushi wa fuyu yori natsu no hō ga ii to omoi-masu. I prefer winter to summer.

Dare yori mo ichi-ban hayaku itadaki ni nobori-mashita. I reached the top sooner than any of the party.

Sake nado nomu yori mo binbōnin ni hodokoshi-nasai. You would better give to the poor instead of spending money on **sake.**

Donnani kurushii to it-te mo, shinu yori mashi desu. Even the most painful thing you could mention would be better than death.

Fuji-san yori utsukushii yama ga ari-masu ka? Is there a mountain more beautiful than Mt. Fuji?

Hana yori dango. Dumplings are better than flowers.

9. De (で)

38. There are four uses of **de.** The first use is in the statement of a fact.

Kore wa hon de gozai-masu. This is a book.

Kinō kara ame furi de, sukoshi mo hare-masen. It has been raining since yesterday without a break in the clouds.

Yūbinkyoku no mukō ga getaya de, tonari wa tabakoya desu. Opposite the Post Office is a **geta** shop and the next is a tobacco dealer.

Kesa Yokohama e mairi-mashi-te, ima kaeri de gozai-masu. I went to Yokohama this morning and am now on my return home.

39. **Desu** is considered to be an Auxiliary Verb, but as it is formed by abbreviating **de** and **ari-masu**, it must be treated as two distinct words, **de** and **su.** The use of **de** in this case is the same as that explained in the preceding section.

40. The second use of **de** is to indicate the place of an action.

Jibun no heya de nasai. Do it in your own room.

Jochū wa o-katte de sakanaya no kozō to hanashi-te i-masu. The maid is talking in the kitchen with the fishmonger's apprentice.

Kono mae no toki wa Yamamoto-san no o-taku de negai-mashita ga, kondo wa gakkō no kyōinshitsu de atsu-mat-te wa ikaga deshō. We met at Mr. Yamamtoto's last time but how about meeting in the teachers' room at school next time?

Nezumi ga todana no naka de gotogoto yat-te i-masu yo. The rats are making a great noise in the closet.

Yūbinkyoku de kawase wo kumi-mashita. I made out a money order application at the Post-Office.

41. The above use of **de** is often confused with a similar use of **ni,** which has already been explained. This confusion arises because both indicate place; but we must make a clear distinction between the two. Strictly speaking, **ni** is used in a static sense, while **de** is used in a dynamic sense. In other words **ni** simply indicates where things are, while **de** defines where actions are performed. It will be easy to understand this explanation if we compare the following two sentences: **Kodomo wa niwa de asonde i-masu,** and **Kodomo wa niwa ni ason-de i-masu,** both meaning, Children are playing in the garden. The former with **de** is an answer to the question, **Ko-domo wa nani wo shi-te ason-de i-masu ka**? What are the children doing? and the latter to the question, **Kodomo wa doko ni i-masu ka?** Where are the children? Upon the choice of the Postposition **de** or **ni** depends the accuracy of the answer to these questions. It would be wrong to give the second answer to the first question and the first to the second question. The following questions, turning on where and what, further illustrate the use of **de** and **ni**:

Q. **Oyaji wa saki hodo soto kara kaet-te ki-ta yō deshita ga, doko ni i-masu ka**? I thought father came back from outdoors some time ago, but where is he now?

A. **Tsukare-ta to it-te nikai ni ne-te i-masu yo.** He said he was tired; he is now lying down *upstairs.*

Q. **Oyaji wa sakihodo soto kara kaet-te ki-ta yō deshita ga, nani wo shi-te i-masu ka?** I thought father came back from outdoors some time ago, but what is he doing now?

A. **Tsukare-ta to it-te nikai de ne-te i-masu yo.** He said he was tired; he is now *lying down* upstairs.

42. The third use of **de** is to indicate the instrument or means by which work is accomplished.

Empitsu de kai-te mo yoroshū gozai-masu ka? May I write with a pencil?

Me de mi, mimi de kiki, atama de kangae-ru. We see with our eyes, hear with our ears and think with our heads.

Hasami ga ari-masen nara sono naifu de kit-te kudasai. If you have no scissors please cut it with that knife.

Go-nin no ninpu de katazukeru koto ni itashi-mashita. We have decided to do the cleaning (put things in order) with five workmen.

Nawa de shibat-te mot-te yukeru tōfu ga ari-masu ka? Is there any bean-curd that can be tied up with a cord and carried?

43. The fourth use of **de** is to indicate the reason for an action.

Tonari no radio ga urusai no de heikō shi-te i-masu. We are completely upset by the troublesome noise of the neighbor's radio.

Te ga nai no de kyōkai no atsumari ni mo de-rare-masen. As we have no help we cannot even go to church.

Buji ni kaet-te ki-ta no de anshin shi-mashita. I am relieved by his safe return.

Furitsuzuku no de, michi ga waruku-te komari-masu. We are annoyed by the bad condition of the roads, due to the continued rain.

Amari naku no de byōki de wa nai ka to shimpai de nari-masen. I am very much worried because he cries so much, as if he were ill.

44. In the above examples **de** follows the Verb, usually with **no**, becoming **node**. However in the following sentences **de** is used without **no**.

Byōki de nagaku toko ni tsui-te i-masu. He has long been confined to bed with illness.

Kaze wo hiki-mashi-te, sore de shitsurei itashi-mashita. As I had taken a cold I was unable to go.

Gotsugō de zehi go-shusseki kudasai. If you can do so, be sure and come to the meeting.

If, however, we use **de** with adjective forms, adding **na**, the combination of **no** with **de** is required, as in: **Byōki-na node**—, As I am ill—; **sore-na node**—, because of this—; and **Gotsugō na no deshō ga, go-shusseki ni nari-masen-deshita,** Perhaps for some personal reason, he was not present.

10. Ya (や)

45. The **Joshi**, Postposition, **ya** is used as a connective in the enumeration of things mentioned in the sentence.

Ume no hana ya sakura no hana ga ichiji ni saki-dashi-mashita. Plum blossoms and cherry blossoms have come out at the same time.

Katō-kun ya Yamada-kun ga ichi-ban hayaku o-mie ni nari-mashita. Mr. Katō and Mr. Yamada came first.

Kurisumasu no kaimono ya iroiro no kaimono wo shi-te mairi-mashita. I have been out for Christmas and other shopping.

Tōkyō Eki no mae ni wa Marubiru ya Chuō Yubinkyoku ya rippa-na tatemono ga takusan ari-masu. In front of Tōkyō Station there are many splendid buildings, such as the Marunouchi Building and the Central Post Office.

Kono mondai wa kinō ya kyō no koto de wa ari-masen. This is not a question of yesterday or today.

46. The above use of **ya** is somewhat like that of **to** which has already been explained. However, **to** is used when all the objects then in mind are expressed in words, while the use of **ya** implies that there are other similar things not specifically enumerated. If one says **Hon to chōmen ga ari-masu,** There are books and notebooks, he means books and notebooks only. If, however, one says, **Hon ya chōmen ga ari-masu,** There are books, notebooks, etc., he means there are other similar or associated things not mentioned, perhaps pencils and paper,

besides books and notebooks. In the same way, if one says, **Yaoya to sakanaya ga noki wo narabe-te i-masu,** There is a row of green-grocers' and fishmongers' shops, he means there are only these two kinds of shops in the street. But if one says, **Yaoya ya sakanaya ga noki wo narabe-te i-masu,** There is a row of green-grocers', fishmongers' shops, etc., he suggests there are other shops besides these. Therefore, **to** should be used in a limited specific sense, while **ya** should be used in a more inclusive, but indefinite sense. **To** should never be used in such a sentence as the following: **Naniya ka ya to isogashi-ku go-busata itashi-mashita,** As I have been busy with one thing or another, I have not written you (or called on you) for a long time.

11. Dano (だの)

47. The word **dano** is also used in enumeration, in the same way as **ya** in the preceding section.

Katana dano teppō dano omocha wo iroiro kat-te ki-ma-shita. I have bought swords, guns, and other toys.

Dōbutsuen ni it-te kaba dano kirin dano kuma dano mi-te mairi-mashō. Let us go to the Zoo and see the hippo-potamuses, giraffes, bears, etc.

Bōshi dano kutsu dano O-shōgatsu no shitaku ga deki-mashita ne. You are already prepared for the New Year! A new hat, shoes and everything!

12. Wa (は)

48. Close attention to the Postposition **wa** is very important. The first use of **wa** is to point out things which are to be ex-plained or defined.

Waga Nippon wa shimaguni desu. Japan is an island empire.

Watakushi ga mi-ta no wa chigai-masu. The one I saw was different from that.

Tsukue wa ki de tsukut-ta mono de ari-masu. A desk is a thing made of wood.

Bara no hana wa utsukushii hana de gozai-masu. Roses

are beautiful flowers.

Tōkyō wa Nippon jū de ichi-ban ōkii machi de gozai-masu. Tōkyō is the largest city in Japan.

49. The second use of **wa** is to call sharp attention to one particular thing, or to mark out one special thing as distinct from others.

Ano kata wa donata desu ka? Who is that man?

Sore wa watakushi no pen de gozai-masu. That is my pen.

Watakushi wa sono koto wa sukoshi mo shiri-masen-de-shita. I did not know anything about that affair.

Rampu wa ari-masen ga, dentō ga gozai-masu. There are no lamps, but there are electric lights.

Yuku koto wa yuki-masu ga, hayaku wa yuki-masen. I am certain to go, but I shall not go early.

50. As a rule this use of **wa** is with each of two things to be contrasted or compared. For instance, if one says, **Ano ko wa tsukue no mae ni suwat-te wa i-masu ga, hon wo yon-de wa i-masen,** That child is sitting in front of the desk, but he is not reading the book, he contrasts **suwat-te** and **yon-de.** On the other hand if one says, **Ano ko wa tsukue no mae ni wa suwat-te i-masu ga, hon wa yon-de i-masen,** Although that child is sitting in front of the desk, he is not reading the book, he draws sharp attention, by contrast, to **Tsukue no mae ni,** in front of the desk, and **hon,** book. In most cases **wa** is used instead of **ga** even in ordinary sentences with negative Verbs. In an affirmative sense one may say **Akai empitsu ga ari-masu,** There is a red pencil; but in a negative sense, one says **Akai empitsu wa ari-masen,** There is no red pencil. The following are additional examples:

AFFIRMATIVE FORMS	NEGATIVE FORMS
Kono sora moyō de wa kitto ame ga furi-mashō. From the looks of the sky it will surely rain.	**Kono sora moyō de wa kitto ame wa furi-masu-mai.** From the looks of the sky it is not at all likely to rain.

Kono gaitō wa furuboke te i-te, daibun kita mono to mie-masu. This coat is old and looks as if it had been worn a great deal.

Kono gaitō wa marude atarashii mono to wa mie-masen. This overcoat does not look entirely new.

Gakumon wa deki-naku-te mo karada ga jōbu de kekkō desu. Even though he is not a good student it is fine that he has a strong body.

Gakumon wa deki-temo karada ga yowaku-te wa shikata ga nai. Even though he is a good student, he can do nothing with a weak body.

Yuku koto wa yuki-masu ga hayaku yuki-masu. I am going, but I shall go early.

Yuku koto wa yuki-masu ga hayaku wa yuki-masen. I am going, but I shall not go early.

51. The third use of **wa** is to imply many repetitions of the same action.

Ano kodomo wa kochira wo mi-te wa warat-te i-masu ga nani ga okashii no deshō. That child keeps looking this way, and laughing, but what is amusing him so?

Tsumara-nai shomotsu wo kat-te ki-te wa yon-de i-masu. He keeps buying and reading worthless books.

Ton-de wa ochi, ochi-te wa tobi shi-te, tōtō ki no eda ni tobitsuki-mashita. Jumping and falling, falling and jumping, he has finally succeeded in jumping and clinging to a branch of the tree.

52. The fourth use of **wa**, in two different combinations, is to emphasize one designated idea, placed at the end of the sentence. The first combination is with **ni (ni wa)** placed between Declinable Words.

Aru ni wa ari-masu ga, takusan wa ari-masen. We have some, but not many.

Miru ni wa mi-mashō ga, kanarazu kau to wa kimari-masen. I shall look at it, but may not buy it.

Nomu ni wa nomu ga, sō taishu de wa ari-masen. He drinks, but he is not a great drinker.

Hima ga nai ni wa nai no desu ga, nan to ka tsugō wo tsu-

ke-te mi-mashō. I have no time to spare, but I shall try by some means to do it.

Samui ni wa samū gozai-masu ga, uchi no naka wa naka-naka atatakō gozai-masu. It is cold, but is quite warm inside the house.

The second combination of **wa** is to emphasize contradictory ideas.

Tōkyō e yuki wa shi-ta ga, doko e mo yorazu ni kaeri-mashita. I went to Tōkyō but did not stop at any place.

Mai nichi don ni awase wa itashi-masu ga, dōmo okure-gachi de komari-masu. I correct (my watch) by the noon gun every day, but I am troubled because it has a tendency to lose time.

Takusan ari wa itashi-masu ga, sashiageru no wa hitotsu mo ari-masen. I have many, but have none to give you.

Kyō o-mie ni nari wa itashi mashō ga, dōmo gozen chū wa muzukashii deshō. He is coming today, but it will be difficult for him to get here before noon.

Heta da to it-te waraware wa itashi-mashita ga, betsu ni hara ga tatsu hodo demo ari-masen. I was laughed at for being awkward but I did not really get angry.

53. The fifth use of **wa** is to follow and hence to designate the main Thought Subject of the sentence—not necessarily the Grammatical Subject.

Zō wa karada ga ōkyū gozai-masu. The elephant has a huge body.

Ano hito wa me ga mie-masen. That man cannot see.

Kyō wa ame ga fut-te michi ga waru-i. Today, it is raining and the roads are bad.

Ōsaka wa kawa ga ōku, shitagat-te hashi mo ōi. Ōsaka has many rivers and naturally there are many bridges.

Watakushi wa soto ga kataku-te, naka ga yawaraka desu. My outside is hard and inside soft. (An egg—answer to a riddle).

54. The sixth use of **wa** is to designate each of two things which are contrasted.

Higashi wa yama de, nishi wa umi desu. On the East are the mountains, on the West the sea.

Hana wa sakuragi, hito wa bushi. Of flowers, (the choicest is) the cherry, of men, the knight.

13. Mo (も), To (と), Ya (や), and Ni (に).

55. The various uses of **mo** are explained in this and the following sections. The first is to enumerate various things.

Otona mo kodomo mo ōzei atsumari-mashita. Many assembled, both adults and children.

Daidokoro ni wa manaita mo hōchō mo hōri-dashi-te ari-mashita. In the kitchen, the cutting-board as well as the kitchen knife were left thrown about.

Yuki ga fut-te yane mo michi mo masshiro ni nari-mashi-ta. Roofs as well as roads have all become white with snow.

Kyonen mo kotoshi mo Karuizawa e mairi-mashita. Last year, also this I went to Karuizawa.

Sake mo nomazu tabako mo sui-masen. I neither drink **sake** nor smoke tobacco.

In the above examples two or more words are connected with **mo**, but sometimes **mo** is used with one word only. In such cases other things are implied but not expressed.

Watakushi mo iki-masu. I also am going.

Hon mo oi-te ari-masu. The book also is lying here.

Kinō mo go-issho ni gakkō e mairi-mashita. Yesterday also I went with him to school.

Another use of **mo** is with both the Verb and the Auxiliary Verb, each usually followed by some form of the Verb to do.

Mi mo shi, kiki mo shi-ta. I both saw and heard.

Warawa-re mo shi, home-rare mo shi-te, dandan jōzu ni naru no desu yo. Sometimes laughed at and sometimes praised I shall gradually become skillful.

Ōzei no hito ga nori mo su-reba, ori mo shi-masu. Many people are getting on and also many are getting off.

Yomi mo su-reba, kaki mo shi-masu keredo, kuchi de iu koto ga ichi-ban ō gozai-masu. We both read and write but more frequently speak with our mouths.

56. Besides **mo**, there are other **Joshi**, Postpositions, such as **to**, **ya** and **ni**, which are used for enumeration, each with its own peculiar use. **To** is used in naming a limited number of things, while **ya** is used in a more general and indefinite enumeration. **Ni** is used in the sense of also or too. The last three, **to**, **ya** and **ni** do not necessarily follow the last object enumerated, but **mo** must always follow the last object named.

57. The second use of **mo** is to emphasize the meaning of a preceding word. The following sentences illustrate this use of **mo**, followed by negatives.

Sonnani tōku mo nai yō desu. It does not seem so very far away.

Koe mo tate-nai de ason-de i-masu. They are playing without making a sound.

Neru koto mo dekinai hodo isogashii. I am so busy that I have no time to sleep.

Kaeri wa yoru ni naru ka mo shire-nai. It may be dark before I return.

In the following sentences **mo** also indicates emphasis, with the important word repeated.

Takai mo takai de wa ari-masen ka? Are ga san-byaku yen da sō desu. Aren't they very, very expensive? That one is said to be three hundred yen.

Hayai mo hayai, Ōsaka kara ni-ji-kan-han desu. Certainly very fast, only two hours and a half from Ōsaka.

Yoku ne mo ne-ta mon desu ne. Sakuban kara netōshi desu yo. Didn't he sleep well, all night through without waking?

58. **Wa** is also used for emphasis, as has already been explained, but two points must be kept in mind in the use of **wa** and **mo**: (i) **Wa** is used in a negative answer, while **mo** is used in the affirmative. To the question **Anata mo Nikkō e oide ni nari-masu ka?** Are you also going to Nikkō? If the answer be affirmative, it would be **Hai, watakushi mo mairi-masu,** Yes, I am going, too. If the answer be negative, **wa** is used, **Iie, wa-**

takushi wa mairi-masen, No, I am not going. (ii) **Wa** is used for emphasis in a definite, limited sense, while **mo** is used in a general indefinite sense. If one says, **Nani wo suru nimo, kane ga naku-te wa komari-masu,** It is hard to accomplish anything without money, **wa** is used in an indefinite way. But if one says, **Shōbai wo suru ni wa, kane ga naku-te wa komari-masu,** In order to carry on business one must have money, **wa** has a specific meaning. Of course one can say, **Shōbai wo suru ni mo, kane ga naku-te wa komari-masu,** It is also difficult to carry on business without money, but in that case, **mo** has exactly the same meaning as **wa** in the former instance, that is, it is general and indefinite.

59. The third use of **mo** is to indicate quantity, degree or length of time.

Ik-ka-getsu no seikatsuhi wa hyaku-yen mo are-ba jūbun deshō. For living expenses for one month, a hundred yen will be ample.

Is-shū-kan mo su-reba, o-kaeri ni nari-masu. He will return after one week.

Mō ni-san-nichi mo tachi-masu to, hana ga saki-masu. Within two or three days the flowers will bloom.

Go-roku-jū-nin mo mie-reba, kono heya wa ippai desu. This room will be filled if fifty or sixty people come.

Sukkari kaimono wo shi-tara, is-sen mo nokori-masen. By the time I finish all my shopping not a sen will be left.

60. The fourth use of **mo** is suppositional.

Mainichi dekake-masu ga, osoku mo yo-ji ni wa kaeri-masu. Though I go out every day, I return home at the latest by four o'clock.

Tatoe yome-te mo imi ga yoku wakara-nai deshō. Even though I read it I think I cannot clearly understand the meaning.

Ikura ōzei oide ni nat-te mo, mazu gojū-nin kurai to omoi-masu. Even though many should come, I think there will not be more than fifty.

Sonouchi ni ukagau to shi-te mo, kyō asu ni wa deki-masen. Even though I call upon you in the near future, I cannot go today or tomorrow.

Go-shinsetsu ni shi-te itadai-ta koto wa shin-demo wasu-re-masen. I shall never forget the kindness which I have received from you, even when I die.

61. The fifth use of **mo** is to express the sense of "even though":

Roshiyago de o-kaki ni nari-mashi-te mo watakushi ni wa yome-masen. Even if you write it in Russian, I cannot read it.

Ōsaka e it-te mo dokomo kenbutsu shi-masen deshita. Though I went to Ōsaka, I did not go anywhere for sightseeing.

I-te mo i-nai to it-te, kotowari-mashita. Even though he was in, he refused the man, saying he was not in.

Mi-te mo mi-nai fū wo shi-te i-mashita. Even when he saw it he pretended not to see it.

Megane wo kake-te mo hakkiri miwake ga tsuki-masen. Even if I wear glasses, I cannot distinguish things clearly.

In the above sentences **mo** follows the Verb by the aid of **te.** This use is apt to be confused with the use of **mo** as explained above, but generally speaking, the future is expressed suppositionally by **mo**, as explained in No. 60, while the present and past conditional are expressed in the sense of "even if".

14. Demo (でも)

62. The **Joshi**, Postposition, **demo** is used to express a certain condition or standard without defining it clearly, indicating at the same time that there are other conditions or standards similar to the one suggested.

Myōban demo hima deshi-tara, chotto o-ide kudasai. If you are free tomorrow evening, drop in for a little while.

Kono kurai no koto demo deki-masen ka? Is even a thing

like this impossible for you?

Is-sen demo jibun ga hatarai-te tot-ta o-kane da to omō to, muda ni wa tsukae-masen. I cannot waste even one **sen** when I realize it was earned by my own labor.

Yasuku demo are-ba morat-temo yoroshii desu ga—, I might buy it if it were cheap, but—

Mizu demo o-yu demo ippai itadaki-tō gozai-masu. I should like to have a glass of water, cold or hot, it makes no difference.

If **demo** is used with the Verb or the Auxiliary Verb, it is usually followed by some form of the Verb **suru.**

Ame ga furi demo suru to, zōri de wa komari-mashō. If it rains, you'll have difficulty with the **zōri.**

Kaze wo hiki demo suru to, ike-nai kara gwaitō wo me-shi-te iras-shai. As it would be too bad if you should catch cold, it is better to keep your overcoat on.

Shika-rare demo shi-tara sukoshi wa otonashiku naru-deshō. If he were scolded he would probably become a little more gentle.

The above use of **demo** is to be distinguished from the use of the same combination after Nouns in the following sentences.

Michi wa semai desu ga jidōsha demo ike-masu. The road is narrow, but even an auto can pass over it.

Tōkyō no shimbun demo kaki-mashita ne. It has beer ported even in the Tōkyō newspapers, hasn't it?

15. Sae (さへ)

64. Next, **sae,** even, or if only, is used to emphasize one specific thing or action.

Yomi-sae sure-ba kaka-naku-te mo yoroshii desu ka? If I can only read(it), is it all right not to write(it)?

Heya no sumi no hō ni demo hondana ga oke-sae su-re-ba kekkō desu. It would be splendid if I could only put my book-case in the corner of the room.

Takaku sae are-ba shinamono ga ii to omot-te i-masu. If things are only expensive he thinks they are good.

Karada sae jōbu de i-reba shimpai ari-masen. If only the

body be strong there is no need to worry.

Kii-te sae osoroshii hanashi desu. It's a terrible story even to listen to.

Kinō no ōmizu de ano ishibashi sae nagare-ta sō desu. Even that stone bridge was carried away by yesterday's flood.

In the above cases when **sae** follows an inflected **Jodōshi**, Auxiliary Verb, or **Dōshi**, Verb, some suppositional words, such as **su-reba** or **shi-tara**, should generally be added:

Kusuri wo nomi-sae su-re-ba . . . If you only take the medicine . . . . .

O-sake wo yame-sae shi-tara, dare mo kujō wo ii-masen. If you would only stop drinking **sake**, nobody would complain.

65. Another use of **sae** is to pile one more thing upon a situation already serious.

Ame ga tsuyoi noni, kaze sae kuwawat-te, daibōfū ni nari-mashita. It was raining hard and then with the wind added, it has developed into a severe typhoon.

Formerly this use of **sae** was limited to the classical language (**Bungo**) but today, it is also used in the colloquial.

16. Koso (こそ)

66. **Koso,** indeed, truly, is used to give special emphasis to things or actions.

Kono ichi-nen-kan koso, watakushi ni tot-te wa taihen ni shiawase-na toshi deshita. Of all years this has surely been the most fortunate for me.

Nari koso rippa da ga, futokoro wa sabishi sō da ne. His appearance is truly splendid, but his pocket seems light.

Hiroku koso are, marude abaraya no yō desu. This house certainly is large, but it seems completely run down and out of repair.

Sute koso shinai ga, jitsu wa hitsuyō de wa nai no desu. Of course I don't throw it away, but really I do not

need it.

O-me ni koso kakara-nai ga, o-namae wa yoku shōchi shite i-masu. True, I have not had the honor of meeting you, but your name is well known to me.

67. It has already been explained that **wa** is used to distinguish or point out specific things. **Koso** is also used in the same way, but in a more emphatic sense, as may be seen by comparing the use of **wa** and **koso** in the following sentences: **Kuwashiku kiki wa shinai ga, shui wa mō yoku wakari-mashita**, I have not heard about it in detail, but understand the purport well; **Kuwashiku kiki koso shinai ga** . . . . . Of course I have not heard about it in detail, but . . . . . In these sentences, the expression **kiki koso** is much stronger than the simple **kiki wa**. This is also illustrated in common greetings:

A. **Omoi nagara, gobusata itashi-mashite.** Though I think about you often, I have not seen you for a long time.

B. **Iie, watakushi koso gobusata mōshiage-mashi-te** . . . No, it is I who have long neglected to call upon you.

Watakushi koso in B's reply is much stronger than the ordinary **watakushi wa.**

17. Dake (だけ)

68. The first of the four uses of **dake** is to express one and only one special thing, action, condition, person or object.

Koko de miru dake de, mot-te it-te wa ike-masen. You are permitted only to look at it here, you must not take it away.

Kotoshi wa atsui dake de, amari byōnin wa nai yō desu. This year it is simply hot; there do not seem to be many cases of illness.

O-kiki ni nat-ta dake no koto wo o-hanashi-kudasai. Please tell me only what you have heard.

Yoku tabe-ta ne, nokot-ta no wa, hone dake jā nai ka? They've certainly eaten with good appetites, leaving the bones only?

69. The second use of **dake** is to express limit in quantity or degree.

Kono fukeiki ni, kū dake hatarake-ba, erai mono da. In this depression it is an achievement if one only earns a living.

Ichi-yen dake itadaki-mashō. I shall accept one yen only.

Ano gakkō de wa roku-jū-nin dake nyūgaku wo yurusu sō desu. That school admits sixty students only.

Moteru dake mot-te it-te kudasai. Take just as many as you can carry.

O-imo wo go-hyaku-me dake yokoshi-te kudasai. Please send five hundred **me** only of potatoes.

70. The third use of **dake**, frequently followed by the Postposition **ni**, is to express the reason for a given situation or assertion.

Shinamono ga jōtō dake ni nedan mo yasuku ari-masen. As these are first class articles the price is not cheap.

Ichi-man-yen ijō mo kake-ta dake ni chiisai ga rippana uchi da. Though small, this house is a very good one, as it cost more than 10,000 yen.

Fudan yasuma-nai dake, seiseki mo ii sō desu. I hear his records are good, as he is never absent from school.

Ki ga ii dake ni, itsu mo hito ni yarikome-rare-te i-ru. As he is good-natured, he is always imposed upon by others.

Kiku dake yabo da. It is dull even to hear about it.

Ano hito wa rikutsu wo iu dake ni hōritsu ni akarui. As he has a say in everything, he has evidently studied law.

Kondo kita jochū wa yoku hataraku dake ni yoku kuu ne. As the new maid works hard she also eats a great deal, doesn't she?

18. Bakari (ばかり)

71. Of the two uses of **bakari**, meaning only, the first is to limit the meaning to one thing.

Rōmaji bakari de kai-ta Nippongo no tegami wa yomi-nikui. Japanese letters written in the Roman alphabet

only are difficult to read.

Watakushi bakari ga itadai-te wa osore iri-masu. It is embarrassing for me only to receive this.

Sonnani hon wo yon-de bakari i-te wa, byōki ni nari-masu yo. If you spend so much time reading only you will get ill.

Ne-te i-ru bakari ga nō de wa aru-mai, chitto oki-te hataraki-nasai. It is not good to be always lying in bed; better get up and work a little.

Kirei-na bakari de, ikkō hin ga ari-masen. She is beautiful, but has no refinement.

72. The second use of **bakari**, in the sense of about, is to indicate approximate degree or quantity.

Seikatsuhi wa ik-ka-getsu ni-hyaku-yen bakari are-ba tari-mashō. About two hundred yen will be enough for living expenses for one month.

Tamago wo nijū bakari tot-te ki-te kudasai. Please bring me about twenty eggs.

Nyūin shi-te kara mō ni-shū-kan bakari ni nari-masu. It is about two weeks already since I entered the hospital.

Eri wo go-rop-pon to kutsushita wo san-zoku bakari ire-te kudasai. Please put in five or six collars and about three pairs of stockings.

Sakuya no shūkai wa ni-hyaku-nin bakari deshita. There were about two hundred people at the meeting last night.

19. Hoka (ほか) and Shika (しか)

73. Either **hoka** or **shika**, only, nothing but, is used to indicate definitely that one special thing is designated to the exclusion of all others. In the following examples it will be seen that **hoka** and **shika** are used with negatives, such as **masen** or **nai**.

Sore is-satsu hoka ari-masen. That is the only copy.

Maishū ikkai de, suiyōbi no hoka oide ni nari-masen. He

comes once a week, on Wednesday only.

Ano heya ni dentō ga hitotsu shika nai no desu mono. There is only one electric light in that room.

Akanbō wa chichi wo non-de neru koto hoka yō wa ari-masen. Babies have nothing to do but drink milk and sleep.

Mikan mo ringo mo itsutsu hoka kat-te ki-masen deshita. I have bought nothing but five oranges and five apples.

Ichi-nichi kakat-te koredake shika shiagara-nai no desu ka? Is this all you have finished in a whole day's work?

Jidōsha wa ichi-dai shika ari-masen deshita. There was only one automobile.

Mada sukoshi hanasu koto shika deki-masen. So far I am able only to talk a little bit.

Go-jus-sen shika mot-te i-masen. I have fifty **sen** only.

Watakushi wa mada kanji wo narai-masen kara, kana shika kake-masen. As I have not yet learned the (Chinese) characters I can write in **kana** only.

74. In the above sentences the meaning in each case would be the same if the words **hoka** and **shika** were interchanged. Whether one says, **Hitori hoka o-mie ni nari-masen** or **Hitori shika o-mie ni nari-masen**, the meaning is the same.

75. In paragraph No. 59, the third use of **mo** was explained. This Postposition is used when the number or quantity is large. **Hoka** and **shika** on the other hand are used, with negatives, when the number or quantity is small.

Watakushi wa jū-nen mo Nippon ni i-mashita ga, tōtō Nikkō e iku ori ga arimasen deshita. Even though I was in Japan for ten years I never had a chance to go to Nikkō.

Watakushi wa ichi-nen shika Nippon ni i-masen deshita kara, Nikkō e iku ori ga ari-masen deshita. As I was in Japan only one year, I did not have a chance to go to Nikkō.

In the first sentence **mo** impresses the fact that ten years

are a long time, while **shika** in the second sentence shows that the speaker has been in Japan only a short time. The following examples will further illustrate the different implications inherent in **mo** and **shika.**

A very poor man has lost his purse:

Q. **Takusan o-kane ga hait-te i-mashita ka?** Was there much money in it?

A. **Hai, ichi-yen mo hait-te i-mashita.** Yes, there was as much as one **yen** in it.

A very rich man has lost his purse:

Q. **Takusan o-kane ga hait-te i-ta deshō?** Of course there was much money in it?

A. **Iie, hyaku-yen shika hait-te i-masen deshita.** No, there was only about a hundred **yen** in it.

The use of **mo** in the first example implies that although one yen is a small sum of money, it means much to the poor man. On the contrary, in the second example, the use of **shika** implies that though a hundred yen is many times more than one yen it means almost nothing to the rich man.

20. **Kiri** (きり)

76. The word **kiri** is used to designate one special thing, excluding others.

Anata ga o-ide ni naru kiri, dare mo o-ide-ni nari-masen. You are the only one coming, nobody else.

Senshū o-me ni kakat-ta kiri de gozai-masu. I have not seen him since last week.

San-jus-sen kiri mot-te i-masen. I have thirty sen only.

Ni-kai kiri de san-gai wa ari-masen. There are only two stories, no third.

Hako wa ari-masu ga sore kiri de, nani mo hait-te i-masen. There is a box, but that's all, nothing at all in it.

21. **Kurai** (くらい) and **Gurai** (ぐらい)

77. The word **kurai**, about, frequently pronounced **gurai**, indicates degree or quantity.

Sukoshi kurai wa nan demo ii ja ari-masen ka? At all

events a little is permissible, isn't it?

Ji ga yome-nai kurai fujiyū na koto wa ari-masen. There is scarcely anything so inconvenient as to be unable to read.

Fuji-San gurai takō gozai-masu ka? Is it about as high as Mt. Fuji?

Ha no itai kurai kimochi no warui koto wa ari-masen. There is scarcely anything so uncomfortable as a tooth ache.

Kono kurai na tokoro de yoroshū gozai-masu ka? Is this about as much as you would like?

22. **Hodo** (ほど)

78. Of the two uses of **hodo** the first indicates approximate quantity or degree.

Onaka ga yoreru hodo warai-mashita. I laughed so much that my insides (abdomen) are almost twisted.

Tsuki to suppon hodo chigai-masu. They differ as does the moon from a turtle.

Me ni mie-nai hodo chiisai deshita. It was so small it could scarcely be seen with the eye.

Okii inu desu ga koushi hodo wa ari-masen ne. This is a huge dog, but not so large as a calf, is it?

79. The second use of **hodo** measures the effect of a given cause.

Kike-ba kiku-hodo omoshirō gozai-masu. The interest increases as one listens.

Shikare-ba shikaru hodo naki-masu. The more she (he) is scolded the more she cries.

Yasui hodo kekkō desu ga sonna yasui no wa ari-masu-mai. The cheaper the better, but I think there will be none so cheap as that.

Naga-kere ba nagai hodo tsugō ga ii deshō. The longer it is the better it will suit, I think.

Setsumei suru hodo yoku wakaru to omoi-masu. I think the more thorough the explanation the better it will be understood.

23. Yara (やら)

80. There are three uses of the Postposition **yara.** The first is in the enumeration of different things.

Fude yara pen yara iroiro no mono ga ari-masu. There are many such things as writing brushes, pens, etc.

Utau yara odoru yara ōsawagi deshita. There was much gaiety, with singing, dancing, etc.

Getabaki no hito yara zōri no hito yara kutsu no hito yara, nakanaka tekazu ga kakari-masu. It is very troublesome to take care of all the people, some wearing **geta**, some **zori**, some shoes, etc.

Chonmage yara, bōzu atama yara, naka ni wa hage-atama mo ari-mashita. There were some people with top-knots, some with shaven heads like priests, and some bald-headed.

Akai no yara, shiroi no yara, murasaki no yara, iku shurui mo ari-mashita. There were many different kinds, red, white, purple, etc.

81. The second use of **yara** is to indicate indefiniteness or doubt.

Tenki ni naru yara ame ni naru yara handan ga tsuki-masen. I cannot judge whether it's going to clear up or rain.

Yuku no yara kuru no yara hakkiri shi-nai yō desu. It seems uncertain whether he is coming or whether he is going.

Katsuobushi wa dochira ga atama yara shippo yara wa-kari-masen. We cannot tell which is the head and which is the tail of a dried tuna fish.

Nani yara kani yara taezu yōji ni oware-te i-masu. I am always over burdened with work of one kind or another.

Jibun no toshi wa ikutsu yara shira-nai de i-ru no desu. He does not seem to know his own age.

82. The third use of **yara** indicates a supposition.

Watakushi ga koko ni iru no ga wakaru no yara, kochira

wo mui-te warat-te i-masu. He evidently knows that I am here as he is looking in this direction smiling.

Kono goro wa hima nano yara, yoku asobimawat-te i-masu. He seems to have no work recently as he is often playing around.

Kaze wo hii-ta no yara kushami bakari shi-te i-masu. He seems to have a cold as he is all the time sneezing.

Nani yara tat-te i-mashita. Something was standing there.

Dō yara ame ga agari sō desu. It seems as though the rain were going to stop.

This conversational **yara** comes from its use in the **Bungo,** literary language.

24. Ka (か)

83. Of the three uses of **ka** the first is interrogative.

Anata mo oide ni nari-masu ka? Are you also coming (going)?

Kore wa hon desu ka? Chōmen desu ka? Is this a book or a notebook?

Mina-san okawari mo gozai-masen ka? Are you all well? (Has there been no change in your family?)

Yokohama e itsu otsuki ni nari-masu ka? When do you arrive at Yokohama?

Yaoya-san ga ki-mashita ga, nani ka iri-masu ka? The green grocer has come, do you need anything?

84. The second use of **ka** is to indicate indefiniteness or doubt.

Watakushi no toko ni ari-mashō ka? Hitotsu sagashi-te mi-mashō. It may be in my room, I shall look for it.

Dōse ōzei wa oide ni nari-masu-mai ga, iku nin ka kitto mie-masu yo. Though many people may not come, at any rate some will surely be here.

Katsudō kenbutsu ni ikō ka yame yō ka shian chū desu. I am pondering whether or not I should go to see the movies.

Kisha ka densha ka, dochira demo yoroshii deshō. Either the steam train or the electric car will be all right.

Kesa kara nanda ka karada no guai ga hen deshite ne. I have not felt very well since this morning.

85. The third use of **ka** is to indicate a contrary meaning.

Sonnani hayaku kaet-te kora-reru deshō ka? Is it possible to return so soon as that?

Sonna bakarashii koto ga aru mon (mono) desu ka? Can there be anything so silly as that?

Chotto kii-ta kurai de jissai no koto ga wakari-mashō ka? Is it possible to really understand the matter with such a slight opportunity to hear about it?

Ano hana wa hontō ni utsukushii de wa ari-masen ka? Isn't that flower really beautiful?

Arui-te nakanaka ikeru mono ka, sugu ni kuruma no shitaku wo shi-te kudasai. How is it possible to walk? Please get the car ready at once.

In the above examples "irony" so called, is used, i.e. when **ka** is combined with **kaet-te kora-reru deshō,** in the first example, the sentence means, It would be impossible to come back so soon. Likewise, in the fourth example, **Utsukushii de wa ari-masen** means it is not beautiful, but when combined with **ka**, a contrary meaning is given, i.e. It is beautiful, is it not? However, in this case, the desire of the speaker to secure approval of his opinion is strongly felt. Compare the following two sentences: **Myōnichi Nikkō e mairi-masu ga, anata mo oide ni nari-masen ka?** I am going to Nikkō tomorrow, won't you go with me? and, **Myōnichi Nikkō e mairi-masu ga anata mo oide ni nari-masu ka?** I am going to Nikkō tomorrow, are you going, too? In the former the speaker is asking the second person to go to Nikkō with him, while in the latter, he is merely asking whether the second person is going to Nikkō or not.

25. Nari (なり)

86. Of the three uses of **nari,** the first is for enumeration. In the following examples the intention of the speaker is to

choose or let the other persons choose one of the things enumerated. In some cases, as in the fifth sentence below, only one of the alternatives is named, but others are in mind.

Kono natsu wa yama nari, umi nari, dokoka e hisho ni dekake-tai to omot-te i-masu. This summer I hope to go either to the mountains or to the sea to escape the heat.

San-nen nari, go-nen nari, tsuzuke-na-kereba nan demo seikō wa itashi-masen. One cannot be successful in anything unless he keeps at it for from three to five years.

Oshiire e shimau nari, sentakuya e dasu nari nasai. Please either put it away in the closet or send it to the laundry.

Jibun de kiki ni yuku nari, mata kika-seru nari shi-te, hayaku kime-te kudasai. Either by going yourself to inquire, or by sending some one else to inquire, please make an early decision.

Yabun nari to sukoshi o-hanashi ni oide kudasai. Please come for a chat any time, say in the evening.

In the following examples, things are simply enumerated, with no intention of choosing.

Mezurashii o-hanashi wo kiku nari go-chisō wo itadaku nari, konna kekkō-na koto wa gozaimasen deshita. I never had such a good time, hearing unusual stories and enjoying the splendid meal.

Kochira mo jidōsha nari, achira mo jidōsha nari de eki no mae wa jidōsha de ippai deshita. There were automobiles on this side, automobiles on that side, and the space in front of the station was filled with automobiles.

87. The third use of **nari** is to emphasize the actual conditions to which attention is directed.

Sono shimbun ni tsutsun-da nari de o-mochi kudasai. Please take it just as it is, wrapped in that newspaper.

Zashiki e hait-ta nari, aisatsu mo shi-nai de, ikinari yōji wo hanashidashi-mashita. As soon as he entered the

drawing room he began to talk business without even a word of greeting.

Bikkuri shi-te odoroi-ta nari, okiagara-nai no desu yo. He was so startled that he could not get up.

Itsumo tsukat-ta nari de katazuke-nai no wa warui kuse desu ne. It is certainly a bad habit to leave things just as one has used them, without putting them away.

26. Ba (ば)

88. The Postposition **ba** has three uses. The first is to indicate uncertainty as to a future event.

Goran ni nari-tai nara ba, ni-san-nichi no uchi ni go-annai itashi-mashō. If you wish to see it, I shall go with you (guide you) in two or three days.

Kaeri ga oso-kere ba, shitsurei itashi-masu ga, hayaku kaere-ba, kitto o-jama itashi-masu. If I come back late I cannot call on you, but if I return early I shall surely call.

Ashita demo o-dekake ni nare-ba chotto o-yori ni nari-masen ka? If you go out tomorrow won't you drop in for a minute on your way?

Ringo ga yasu kereba, futa-hako gurai okut-te itadaki-tai mono desu ga. If the price of apples is cheap, I should like to have about two boxes sent.

Honmono de are-ba jinken yori wa takaku naru deshō. If it's genuine silk the price will be much higher than rayon.

89. The second use of **ba**, in the sense of when, is to indicate future events which are already known or anticipated.

Myōnichi san-ji ni Tōkyō eki e tsuke-ba sono ashi de sugu ni o-taku e ukagai-masu. On arrival at Tōkyō Station at three o'clock tomorrow, I shall go immediately to your house.

Gakki yasumi ni nare-ba, sono ban kuni e tachi-masu. I shall leave for home the very night the term closes.

Kangae-re ba kangaeru hodo wakara-naku nari-masu.

The harder I think, the more difficult it is to understand it.

In each of the above examples the meaning is not suppositional but conclusive, not if, but when. This use of **ba** is somewhat like the use of **to** when two things happen in quick succession (cf. 32). Therefore the meaning would not be different if one should say, **Tōkyō eki ni tsuku-to**, instead of . . . . **tsuke-ba**; **yasumi ni naru-to**, instead of . . . . **nare-ba**; and **kangaeru-to**, instead of **kangaere-ba**.

90. The third use of **ba** is to indicate the cause of the result which follows.

Isshō kenmei ni hatarake-ba, o-kane ga mōkaru no desu. If one works as hard as he can, he can make money.

Mō agarena-kere ba koso, hikikaeshi-te yama wo kudatta no de gozai-masu. As we could not climb any further we came down the mountain.

Gakkō no seiseki ga yo-kere ba, yatoi ireru ki ni nari-masu. If his school records are good, I shall be inclined to employ him.

The above use of **ba** is the same as that of **kara** and **no de** in similar connections. In this use of **ba, koso** is sometimes added to emphasize cause, but it is often omitted.

91. The third use of **ba** is as a Conjunction, with **mo**, following the Subject of each Verb, the combination meaning, both . . . and . . , sometimes with a Negative Verb, neither nor.

Jishitsu mo yo-kere ba iroai mo kono ue ari-masen. The material is good, and the colour combination is faultless.

Kiki mo shi-na kere-ba, mi mo itashi-masen. I neither heard nor saw it.

Sukoshi tate-ba, yome mo sure-ba, kake mo suru deshō. I think you will soon be able to read and write.

Ano uchi de wa isu mo tsuku-re-ba, tsukue mo koshirae-masu. That workshop makes both tables and chairs.

Kyōto e mo yuke-ba Nara e mo mairi-mashita. I v ent to Kyōto and Nara.

27. Tomo (ども)

92. The use of **tomo** in a suppositional sense is shown in the following sentences.

Daijin ni narō tomo, kojiki ni narō tomo, jibun no kokorogake hitotsu jā ari-masen ka? Whether one becomes a cabinet minister or a beggar depends upon one's will, does it not?

Yukō tomo, kaerō tomo, hakkiri shi-ta koto wa kime-te i-masen. I have not decided definitely whether I should go on or return.

Dō shi-yō tomo, watakushi no shit-ta koto de wa ari-masen. Whatever he does, it is not my concern (literally, not something which I have known).

Donata ga oide ni narō tomo, dare mo iron wa ari-masen. Nobody will object, whoever may come.

Tatoi, taore-yō tomo, mokuteki wo tassuru made wa doryoku itashi-masu. Even if I die in the attempt, I shall exert every effort until I attain my purpose.

Sometimes in sentences where **tomo** may be used, **mo** is omitted and **to** alone is used. **Iki-yō to(mo) shi-nō to(mo) shikata ga ari-masen.** Whether he lives or dies, nothing can be done. In all the above examples **mo** may be omitted without changing the meaning.

28. Nara (なら) and Mono-nara (ものなら)

93. The word **nara**, if, is used to indicate a supposition.

Anata ga kaō to omou nara kat-te oki-nasai. If you think you will buy it, then better go ahead and buy it.

Kyō kaeri-masu nara, tabun yo-ji goro no kisha deshō to omoi-masu. If I return today I shall probably take the four o'clock train.

Toshiyori nara konna hageshii shigoto wa deki-masu-mai. If an old man, he may not be able to do such hard work.

Sambika nara, utaeru deshō. If it's a hymn you can sing it, can't you? (or, I think I can sing it.)

Anata ni nara, uchiake-te mo, yoroshii desu. If it's to you,

it is all right to speak freely about the whole matter.

The Postposition **ba** is sometimes added to **nara**, becoming **naraba** or **nareba.**

Ashita jimusho e oide ni nari-masu naraba, chotto o-den-wa wo kudasai. If you are coming to the office tomorrow, please phone me.

Uchi ga wakara-nai naraba, kado no yaoya de o-kiki kudasai. If you cannot find the house please inquire at the greengrocer on the corner.

94. Sometimes **mono** is added to **nara** becoming **mono-nara.** This combination is used, as is **nara,** in a future suppositional sense. More correctly, however, it is used in the sense of, if it be possible.

Sonna muri na koto ga ieru mono-nara, dare mo enryo wa shi-nai. If it be permitted to say such unreasonable things, nobody will stand upon ceremony.

Anata no o-sewa ga negaeru mono-nara, zehi go-shimpai kudasai-masen ka? If it be possible for you to help, may I not beg you to do so?

Sonna ni takusan tabe-rare-ru mono-nara, tabe-te goran-nasai. If you can eat as much as that, go ahead and do it.

Itazura wo shi-yō mono-nara, oyaji kara o-medama da. If I do any mischief I shall get a serious scolding from father.

Osoku kae-rō mono-nara, shime-dashi wo kui-masu yo. If I(you) return late, I shall be shut out of the house.

The first three examples assume that unless a certain thing be impossible one would expect it to be done. The latter two assume that one will do what one ought not to do.

29. Te (て)

95. There are three uses of the Postposition **te,** attached to Adjectives or Verbs. The first is to connect cause and effect.

Kyō wa isogashiku-te osoku kitaku shi-mashita. Today I was very busy and came back home late.

Okashiku-te warawa-zu ni wa i-rare-masen. It is so

amusing that I cannot help laughing.

Kanashiku-te kanashiku-te tamari-masen. I am so sad I cannot bear it.

Sukkari yamanobori no shitaku wo shi-te dekake-mashi-ta. He went out all ready for mountain climbing.

Yuki ga fut-te doko mo masshiro ni nari-mashita. The snow has fallen and it has become white everywhere.

96. The second use of **te** is as a simple Conjunction.

Yuki wa shiroku-te, sumi wa kurō gozai-masu. Snow is white and charcoal black.

Jidōsha wa hayaku-te norigokochi ga ii. The automobile is fast and comfortable to ride in.

Kondo ki-ta jochū wa ki ga kii-te, shigoto mo yoku deki-masu. The new maid is smart and does her work well.

Hidari gawa ni ōkina seiyōkan ga at-te, migi gawa ni shōten ga naran-de i-masu. There is a big foreign house on the left side and a row of shops on the right.

Shūyō ga at-te, keiken mo aru no desu kara, kekkō deshō. As he has both culture and experience, he will be satisfactory, (or he will do splendidly).

97. Third use of **te** is with Verbs used adverbially: **Kesshite wasure-masen.** I shall never forget. **Yorokon-de nan demo itashi-te sashiage-masu.** I shall gladly do anything for you. **Te** is also used with Verbs when they are followed by another Verb used as Auxiliary Verb: **Mado ga ake-te ari-masu.** The window is open. **Rajio wo kii-te i-masu.** I am listening in to the radio. **Te** is also used to connect two Verbs.

30. Shi (し)

98. There are two uses of **shi.** The first is to connect clauses used in simple enumeration.

Ano bessō wa natsu wa suzushii shi, fuyu wa atata-kō gozai-masu. That villa is cool in summer and warm in winter.

Yome mo shi-nai shi, kake mo shi-nai desu. I (he) can neither read nor write.

Hana wa sai-ta shi, tenki wa ii shi, Ueno wa nigiyaka de-shō. As the flowers are out and the weather fine there must be a crowd at Ueno.

Ie mo hiro-ku naru shi, te mo iru yō ni nari-masu. The house will be enlarged and we shall need more workers (hands).

Densha wa tōru shi, nakanaka yakamashii desu yo. Street cars are always passing by and it is very, very noisy.

99. The second use of **shi** is in the sense of **noni.** When used in this way, **shi** is usually preceded by **de wa aru-mai.**

Mō kodomo de wa aru-mai shi, oya no sewa bakari ni nat-te wa i-rare-masen. As I am no longer a child it is too irksome to be continually looked after by my parents.

Ame ga fut-te i-ru no de wa aru-mai shi, kasa wo mot-te yuku yō wa ari-masen. As it appears not to be raining you do not need to take your umbrella.

Sonna kankei de wa aru-mai shi, sore hodo shimpai suru ni wa oyobi-masen. As our relations are not that intimate you need not worry so much.

Watakushi no sekinin de wa aru-mai shi, sonna koto wo iware-te wa meiwaku desu. As this is not my responsibility it is embarrassing to me to be told such things.

Go-yen ya jū-yen de wa aru-mai shi, sonna taikin ga watashi ni dase-masu ka? It is not five yen or even ten yen—do you think I can give such a large sum of money?

Sometimes the expression, **naka-rō shi** is used instead of **de wa aru-mai** without changing the meaning. In both forms **shi** is added to the negative form of supposition.

31. Tari (たり) and Dari (だり)

100. The word **tari** or **dari,** repeated, and—and, is used to enumerate actions.

Hon wo yon-dari, ji wo kai-tari itashi-mashita. We spent our time reading books and writing.

Non-dari, kut-tari suru no ga jinsei no mokuteki de wa

ari-masen. Eating and drinking are not the object of human life.

It-tari, ki-tari shi-te o-kokoro yasu-ku negat-te i-masu. We are on intimate terms, often visiting back and forth.

Yatto ne-tari oki-tari suru yō ni nari-mashita. At last he has so far recovered that he can get up and lie down (by himself).

Atama wo kat-tari, yu ni hait-tari shi-te mairi-mashō. Let us go and have our hair cut and take a bath.

32. Temo (ても) and Demo (でも)

101. The Postposition **temo** is used to state something contrary to that suggested in the first part of the sentence.

Donna ni atsuku-temo kotoshi wa hisho ni wa yuki-masen. No matter how hot it may get we shall not go away from the heat this summer (year).

Nan to iware-temo, sake wa yame-rare-nai to iu no desu. He says that no matter what people say he cannot give up drinking sake.

Katsudō wo mi-naku-temo, hoka ni nani ka miru mono ga ari-masu. Even if you don't see the movies, there will be other things to see.

Ikudo tazune-temo rusu desu. I called on him many times, but he was absent every time.

Ashita o-ukagai shi-temo, sashitsukae gozai-masu-mai ka? Even though I call on you tomorrow, will that be convenient? (will that not be inconvenient?)

Samuku nat-temo mada gaitō no yōi ga ari-masen. Even though it has become cold, I do not yet have an overcoat.

Sometimes **temo** is used twice, with different but related Verbs: **Fut-te mo tet-te mo, yasumu wake ni wa iki-masen.** Rain or shine, it is impossible to take a rest. **Tat-te mo i-te mo i-rare-nai.** I cannot endure it, standing or sitting. **Nai-temo, saken-demo, dō nimo shikata ga nai.** Even though you cry and shout nothing can be done about it.

33. Kara (から) and Node (ので)

102. The two Postpositions **kara** and **node** indicate cause or reason.

Osamui desu kara, dōzo gaitō wo meshi-te irasshat-te kudasai. As it is cold please keep your overcoat on.

Hōgai ni takai deshita kara, kai-masen-deshita. As it was unreasonably high I did not buy it.

Hyaku-nin ijō mieru-deshō kara, kono heya dake de wa semai deshō ne. As there will be more than a hundred people, this room will be too small, will it not?

Sakuban kara hatsunetsu itashi-mashita node, kyō wa yakusho wo yasumi-mashita. I did not go to my office today as I have had a temperature since last night.

Mukō no sora ga makka desu node, kaji deshō to omoi-mashita. As the sky over yonder was so red I thought there must have been a fire.

103. **Kara** and **node** are commonly used without any clear distinction, but strictly speaking, **kara** indicates a cause and **node** reason. If one says, **Yasui kara kat-te kimashita,** It was cheap, therefore I bought it, the cause or occasion of buying is the cheap price. On the other hand if one says, **Yasui node kat-te ki-mashita,** I bought it because the price was cheap, the reason of buying, in a more logical sense, is the cheap price. The following sentence would mean the same if **node** were used instead of **kara**: **Sakuban wa negurushiku-te yoku nemure-nakat-ta kara, inemuri wo shite i-ru.** I was troubled with sleeplessness last night and as I could not sleep well I have been dropping to sleep frequently (today).

XII. SETSUZOKUSHI (接續詞)—CONJUNCTIONS

1. **Setsuzokushi**, Conjunctions, are used to connect two or more ideas. As a rule, they connect words, phrases or clauses, which may usually be regarded as abbreviated sentences.

Ōsaka e yuki-mashita, soshite Kyōto e mo mairi-mashita. I went to Ōsaka and then to Kyōto.

Samuku nat-ta, sorede kazehiki ga ōi no deshō. It has gotten cold, therefore many people have taken colds.

Dandan atatakaku nari-masu, keredomo ume no hana wa saki-masen. It is gradually getting warmer, but the plum trees have not yet blossomed.

Kuwashii koto wa o-ukagai shimashi-te sorekara mōshi-age-masu. I shall give more details when I call upon you.

In the above examples, **soshite**, and then, **sorede**, therefore, **keredomo**, but, and **sorekara**, after that, are Conjunctions.

2. Various kinds of Conjunctions are used on different occasions. One kind of Conjunction is used simply to add one or more thoughts to a previous statement.

Tsukue no ue ni hon ga ari-masu; mata chōmen mo ari-masu. There is a book on the desk, also a notebook.

Kodomo ga byoki de i-te sonoue sai-kun ni ne-rare-te wa taihen desu ne. To have your child ill, and also your wife down is very serious.

Go-shujin wa go-ryokō desu; sorekara oku-sama mo ta-daima o-dekake desu. The master is away on a journey and the mistress is out just now.

Watakushi mo hanashi-mashō; nao anata mo o-hanashi kudasai. I shall speak to him, and I hope you will also do so.

Ame ga furi-masu, soreni kaze mo ari-masu. It is raining, moreover, the wind is blowing.

In the above examples, **mata**, and, **sonoue**, besides, **sorekara**, and then, **nao**, and, **soreni**, moreover, are Conjunctions of this kind. **Narabini**, also, **oyobi**, as well as, **soshite**, and then, **katsu**, also, etc. are other examples of Conjunctions of this kind.

3. Conjunctions of the second kind are used to connect indefinite alternatives.

Anata ga oide kudasai-masu ka, soretomo watakushi ga ukagai-mashō ka? Will you come to see me or shall I call on you?

Myōnichi o-tachi no hazu to zonji masu ga, aruiwa myōgonichi ni nasaru no kamo shire-masen. He is planning to leave tomorrow, but he may postpone starting till the day after tomorrow.

Fukuoka matawa Kumamoto e o-negai shi-te oki-mashita. I have asked them to send it to Fukuoka or Kumamoto.

In the above examples **soretomo**, or (or else), **aruiwa**, or, and **matawa**, or, are Conjunctions of this kind. **Moshikuwa**, otherwise, **hata**, or, are other examples.

4. **Setsuzokushi**, Conjunctions, of the third kind are used in stating an inference or deduction: **sorede**, therefore, **soredesukara**, therefore, **sorenara**, if so, **sokode**, thereupon, **sōsuruto**, in that case, **soshitara**, and then, **sōsureba**, in that case, **shitagatte**, consequently, and **tokorode**, even if, are of this kind. In some of the following sentences **sore** and **sō** at the beginning of **sorede**, **soredewa**, **soredesukara**, **soredakara**, **sōsuruto**, and **sōsureba**, are omitted, the abbreviated forms becoming **dewa**, **desukara**, **dakara**, **suruto**, and **sureba**.

Mō osoku nari-mashita; soredewa o-itoma itashi-mashō. It is getting late, then I must be going.

Sensei ga o-mie ni nari-mashita; sokode o-hanashi wo negai-mashita. The teacher came, thereupon we asked him to speak.

Anata mo irasshai-masu ka? Sorenara watakushi mo otomo shi-mashō. Are you going? If so, I'll go with you.

Sayō de gozai-masu ka? Suruto myōnichi wa o-sashi-tsukae de gozai-masu ne. Is that so? In that case I I think you will be engaged tomorrow.

Bōya wa korogat-ta deshō, dakara hitori de wa ikenai to iu no desu yo. My little boy, you have tumbled down, haven't you? That is why I told you not to go out alone.

Byōnin ga ōi, shitagatte o-isha-san ga isogashii. Many people are ill, so the doctors are busy.

5. Conjunctions of the fourth kind are used to join together two or more sentences of contrary meaning. **Soredemo**, and yet, **sōdesuga**, however, **sōdaga**, however, **sōdesuno ni**, still, **keredomo,** but, **sōdesukeredomo,** true, but, **sōdakeredomo, tokoroga** on the other hand, and **mottomo** (in one use of the yet, **sōdesuga**, however, **sōdaga**, however, **sōdesuno ni**, still, word), only, or, but, are Conjunctions of this kind. **So** at the beginning of these words is sometimes changed into **sore**. As explained in the preceding section, **so** and **sore**, are often omitted, the forms becoming **demo, desuga, daga, desunoni, desukeredomo**, and **dakeredomo**. **Desuga, daga**, and **tokoroga,** are sometimes further abbreviated into **ga**:

O-tazune itashi-mashita, keredomo o-rusu deshita. I called on you, but you were not in.

O-hanashi no koto wa yoku wakari-mashita; sōdesuga, jikkō wa nakanaka muzukashii deshō. I understand what you say very well, but to carry it out will be very difficult.

Nikkō wa kirei deshita; shikashi ame furi de komari-mashita. Nikkō was very beautiful, but unfortunately we were greatly troubled by the rain.

Tokoro ga isogashii mon desukara sukkari wasure-te i-mashita. Yes, but as I was very busy, I forgot all about it.

Mada hayai noni, soredemo o-dekake ni nari-masu ka? Although it is still early, are you leaving already?

Taitei ukagau tsumori desu. Mottomo kyū ni o-kyaku-san demo aru-to shitsurei suru kamo shire-masen. I think I shall call, but if I have an unexpected guest I may not be able to come.

XI. FUKUSHI (副詞)—ADVERBS

1. The function of Adverbs is to qualify Verbs and Adjectives, which are **Yōgen**, Declinable Words. Adverbs help to clarify the meaning of Verbs and Adjectives.

2. In the following examples, **taisō**, very, **nakanaka**, not yet, and **kitto**, certainly, are Adverbs:

Uma ga taisō hayaku kake-te ki-mashita. A horse came running very fast.

Sora moyō ga kawari-mashita ga nakanaka furi-masen ne. The sky has changed but it has not yet begun to rain, has it?

Kono yōsu de wa kitto yuki ni naru-deshō. Judging by appearances it will certainly turn into snow.

Taisō qualifies **hayaku**, fast; **nakanaka** qualifies **furi-masen**, does not fall (rain or snow); **kitto** modifies the clause, **yuki ni naru-deshō,** It will probably snow.

3. Adverbs are classified as Adverbs of Time, Quantity, Degree, Manner, and Method. The following sentences illustrate the use of Adverbs of Time:

Chotto o-dekake desu ga sugu o-kaeri de gozai-masu. He has gone out for a short time, but will soon return.

Mada o-mie ni nari-masen. He has not come yet.

Mō o-yasumi ni nari-mashita ka? Has he already gone to bed?

Sassoku o-tazune shi-te mi-mashō. I shall call at once.

Tōtō dame ni nat-te shimai-mashita. It finally turned out to be no good.

Chotto, a little while, **sugu**, soon, **mada**, not yet, **mō**, already, **sassoku**, at once, and **tōtō**, finally, in the end, are all Adverbs of Time.

4. In the following examples, **kesshite,** certainly never (with negative verb), **yappari**, after all, **kanarazu**, surely, **un'to**, with energy, and **kitto**, certain, are Adverbs of Method:

Kesshite o-wasure ni naranai yō ni o-negai mōshi-masu. I earnestly beg you never to forget (that).

Inaka no hō ga yappari kurashi ii desu. After all it is easier to live in the country.

Kyō wa nani ka o-sashitsukae ga at-ta no deshō ga, ashita wa kanarazu o-ide ni nari-masu. Something must have detained him today, but he will surely come tomorrow.

Un'to oshi-te goran nasai. Try pushing with all your might.

Ame demo kaze demo kitto ukagai-masu. I shall certainly call, rain or wind (rain or shine).

5. The following are examples of Adverbs of Quantity:

Tegami wo takusan kai-te dashi-mashita. I have written and posted many letters.

Ano hito wa maru de shira-nai yō desu ne. He seems not to know anything about it at all.

Watakushi wa sukoshi okure-te mairi-masu. I shall come a little later.

Taitei o-me ni kakat-ta koto no aru kata no yō deshita. Apparently almost all of them were people whom I had met before.

Yohodo o-machi ni nari-mashita ka? Have you waited a long time?

Takusan, many, **marude**, wholly, **sukoshi**, a little, **taitei**, almost and **yohodo**, a long time, are Adverbs of Quantity.

6. Some Adverbs are imitations of sounds or actions:

Ame ga barabara furidashi-mashita. The pattering rain has begun to fall.

Atama bakari pekopeko sage-te-i-masu. His head only is bobbing up and down incessantly.

Ka ga bunbun yat-te ki-te ne-rare-masen-deshita. As the mosquitoes came buzzing about me I was unable to sleep.

Ōzei ga ichido ni batabata hait-te ki-mashita. A crowd of people came noisily rushing in all at the same time.

Samui kaze ga pyūpyū fukidōshi-deshita. The cold wind was whistling all the time.

Barabara, sound of rain, **pekopeko**, action of bowing, **bunbun**, buzzing, humming, **batabata**, sound of foot steps and **pyūpyū**, sound of wind, are Adverbs in imitation of sounds or actions.

7. As a rule Adverbs qualify **Yōgen**, Declinable Words, but sometimes they qualify other words. In the sentence, **Sorosoro arui-te kudasai**, Please walk slowly, the Adverb **sorosoro**, slowly, qualifies the Verb **arui-te**, walk. But if one says, **Motto sorosoro arui-te kudasai**, Please walk more slowly, **motto**, more, qualifies the Adverb **sorosoro**.

8. The position of Adverbs is usually immediately before the qualified words. Some Adverbs, however, are placed at the beginning of the sentence. **Shibaraku ame no yamu no wo mat-te i-mashita**, For some time I was waiting for the rain to stop. In this sentence, **shibaraku**, some time, qualifies **mat-te i-mashita**, (I) was waiting, at the end of the sentence.

9. There are many Adverbial Phrases formed by combining Nouns or Adjectives and the Postpositions **to** and **ni**. In the sentence in paragraph 6, the words imitating sounds and actions can be made into Adverbial Phrases by adding **to**, as **pyūpyū to**, and **batabata to**. In the following sentences, **rippa ni**, handsomely or splendidly, and **kirei ni**, beautifully, are Adverbial Phrases made up of the Nouns, **rippa**, handsome, and **kirei**, beautiful, and the Postposition **ni**.

Kimono wo rippa ni ki-te i-masu. He is wearing the kimono handsomely.

Heya wo kirei ni kazari-mashita. I have decorated my room beautifully.

The same method is used in forming Adverbial Phrases of place, as **koko ni**, here, **soko ni**, there, **doko ni**, where, and **haruka ni**, far away. However as these are combinations of different words, they cannot be considered as Adverbs.

XIII. KANSHI (感詞)—INTERJECTIONS

1. Interjections are either sounds expressive of emotions, such as gladness, anger, happiness, surprise and fear, or ejaculations used in calling another person's attention or in making reply to another person.

2. In the following examples, the Interjection is the first word in each sentence:

Hai, ima sugu ni ukagai-masu. Yes, I shall come right away.

A! wakari-mashita. Oh yes! I understand.

A(tsu)! wasure-te ki-mashita. Oh, dear! I have forgotten to bring it.

Aa! mō kaera-re-mashita ka? Ah! Has he gone already?

Oya! yoku irasshai-mashita ne. Oh! I am glad you have come.

Oyaoya! sore wa goshimpai desu ne. O dear! That is something to make you anxious.

Oya ma! sore wa igai desu ne. For goodness sake! I did not expect that.

Ma! rippa na hana desu ne. My! What a beautiful flower.

Oh! botchan wa dō itashi-mashita ka? Oh! What happened to your son?

Otto dokkoi! abunai desu yo. Hey, wait! That's dangerous.

He! kyō mo mata o-yasumi desu ka? My goodness! He is absent again today?

Hō! sore wa mezurashii mono ga ari-mashita ne. Whew! You've found a rare thing.

Hora! mō hitotsu. Look! Here's another.

Hora! iwanai koto jā-nai. You see! I told you so.

Sora! de-mashita deshō. Look! it's come out.

Ara! anata no wa hontō ni kirei desu ne. Oh! Yours is really beautiful.

Are! sonna koto ga ari-mashita desu ka? Chotto mo zon-ji-masen-deshita. Indeed! Has such a thing really happened? I didn't know a thing about it.

E(tsu)! junsa no kenka desut-te! What! Policemen quarreling, you say!

Kora! nani wo shi-te iru. Hi! What are you doing?

Oi! ii kagen ni shiro. Come! Be moderate.

Sa! mairi-mashō. Come! Let's go.

Haha! naruhodo sō de gozai-masu. Ah, indeed! it's really true.

Ee! soryā kyonen no koto desu. Yes, that was last year, I think.

Iie! tsui kono aida no koto desu. No, that happened only recently.

Iya! watakushi koso go-busata itashi-te ori-masu. No, indeed! I am the one who has not called.

Nani! sonna koto wa kamai-masen. Oh, never mind a thing like that.

Nani! anna toshiyori ni wakaru mon desu ka? Why! Can such an old man understand?

Hya! yamainu ga deta! Help! There's a wild dog!

Um! mō wakat-te-iru yo. Oh, I know about that already.

Un! yakiimo ka? Amari hoshiku-nai na. Oh! baked sweet-potatoes? I don't like them very well.

Oi! kurumaya-san! Hey there, rikisha man!

Ano ne! kore wo achira e yat-te oite kudasai. Say! Put this over there, please.

3. Interjections sometimes come at the end of the sentence. In the following examples the Interjections **yo, wa, ze, sa, ne,** and **kai** are placed at the end of the sentences:

Hikōki ga annani ton-de ki-mashita, hayaku de-te goran-nasai yo. Many aeroplanes are flying! Come out quickly and see them!

Kurai michi wo hitori de yuku no wa kowai desu wa. I certainly am afraid to walk in the dark road alone.

Jidōsha ga mō kuru ze. The car is coming soon.

Nani wasure-te wa i-nai sa. Well! I have not forgotten it.

Mō sakki o-ide ni nari-mashita no desu ne. He has already come, hasn't he?

Dare ka o-ide ni nat-ta no kai. Has somebody come?

4. In the sentence, **Otake ya, gasu wo tsukkepanashi de wa ike-masen**! Otake! Don't leave the gas lighted! **ya** is also an Interjection used by a mistress to her maid.

5. As explained above, Interjections are natural sounds used to express strong emotions. However, although the sounds may be exactly the same, Interjections differ in meaning according to the difference in pitch, strength and tone in which they are spoken. This makes it very difficult to convey in writing the exact meaning of the spoken Interjection. The same Interjection, **Aa** has very different meanings in the following sentences. **Aa! ii kimochi desu.** Oh! I feel fine. **Aa! kutabire-mashita.** Oh! I'm tired. The same is true of **O** in the following. **O! sōsō**, Oh, yes. **O, sō**! That's so! **O! itai.** Oh, it hurts.

XIV. SETTŌGO (接頭語)—PREFIXES AND SETSUBIGO (接尾語)—SUFFIXES

1. The **Jūhin Shi** (十品詞), Ten Parts of Speech, already explained are classified according to their functions. These parts of speech, however, are neither fixed nor unchangeable, as one part of speech can be used as another, or two parts of speech may combine to form a new word. As has been explained in the Chapter on Nouns, besides the original Nouns there are Nouns which have been formed from other parts of speech, or by the combination of two or more parts of speech. That is also true of other parts of speech.

2. It is better, however, to regard the new parts of speech as original, even though formed from another, or by the combination of two parts of speech, without troubling to analyze the origin. For instance, although, **akikaze**, autumn wind, is formed by combining two Nouns, **aki**, autumn, and **kaze**, wind, it is no longer two words, but one independent Noun. Therefore it is proper to treat it as a new word. In the following instance, **Dandan nagabii-te komari-mashita,** As it has dragged on so long I am much troubled, **nagabiku**, drag on, is a Verb, formed by combining the Adjective **nagai**, long, and the Verb **hiku**, pull. But as it has become an independent Verb, being no longer related to the two parts of speech from which it came, it should be treat as an independent word.

3. On the other hand, there are some words which are added to other words, either at the beginning or the end, for the sake of politeness or emphasis. Those preceding words are **Settōgo** (接頭語), Prefixes, and those following are **Setsubigo** (接尾語), Suffixes.

4. Some examples of Prefixes are: **O**, in **O-hayō gozai-masu**, Good morning; **go**, in **Go-ran kudasai**, Please look at it; **sashi**, in **Sashi-tsukae-masu**, I have an engagement, and **tori**, in **Yūbinkyoku de tori-atsukai-masu**, They handle them at the Post Office.

5. There are two kinds of Prefixes. The first kind of Prefixes adds little to the meaning, but adds emphasis and gives clarity. The following are examples of common Prefixes.

Examples of **uchi**:

Uchi-toke-te iroiro o-hanashi wo ukagai-mashita. I have listened to his free and unreserved conversation.

Sonna tsumara-nai koto wa uchi-sute-te oki-nasai. Please disregard such a slight thing as that.

Keshiki wo uchi-nagame-te hi no kureru no wo shiri-masen-deshita. I was so absorbed in looking at the scenery that I did not notice that it was growing dark.

Examples of **sashi**:

Asu wa sashi-tsukae-mashi-te, o-ukagai ga deki-masen. As I have an engagement tomorrow I cannot call on you.

Kore wa shōshō desu keredomo byōnin ni sashi-age-te kudasai. This is not much but please give it to the patient.

Buenryo ni mōshiageru nomo ikagaka-to zonjimashi-te sashi-hikae-te i-mashita. As I questioned the wisdom of telling everything to you frankly, I was reserved in what I said.

Examples of **tori**:

Kono yūbinkyoku de kozutsumi wo tori-atsukai-masu ka? Does this Post Office handle parcel-post packages?

Sore wa tori-tate-te iu hodo no koto de wa gozai-masen. That is not worth special mention.

Dorobō wo tori-nigashi-te zannen deshita. I regret that I let the thief run away.

Examples of **hiki**:

Yūbinkyoku de wa kozutsumi mo hiki-uke-masu yo. The Post Office does also handle parcel-post packages.

Itsu kochira e o-hik-koshi ni nari-mashita ka? When did you move here?

Ginkō kara katte ni o-kane wo hiki-dashi-te tsukat-te shimai-mashita. He drew out money from the bank recklessly and spent it all.

Examples of **tachi**:

Kaji de ruishō shi-te tonari no machi e tachi-noki-mashi-ta. As his house was destroyed by fire, he escaped to the neighboring town.

Ano hanashi wa tōtō tachi-gie ni nari-mashita. That story has at last ceased to attract attention.

O-kaerigake ni chotto o-tachi-yori kudasai. As you are returning, please call in for a moment.

Examples of **oshi**:

Ōzei no aida wo oshi-wake-te kaisatsuguchi no hō e mairi-mashita. Pushing the crowds aside he made his way to the ticket gate.

Teki no gunzei ga oshi-yose-te ki-mashita. The enemy forces came rushing to the attack.

Nan demo jibun no kotoba wo oshi-tōsō to suru node akire-mashita. I was dumb-founded at (became tired of) his pushing through every word (proposition) of his own.

6. The second use of Prefixes is to add some meaning to the word to which it is prefixed. In the following sentences **o, omi** and **go** are polite and deferential Prefixes.

Examples of **o**:

O-hanashi wo uketamawari-mashita. I heard the conversation.

O-mezurashii mono wo arigatō zonji-masu. Thank you cordially for the very unusual thing (gift).

Watakushi wa Manshū de o-me ni kakari-mashita Katō de gozai-masu, o-wasure ni nari-mashita ka? I am the Katō who met you in Manchoukuo; have you for-

gotten me?

Examples of **omi**:

Omi-ashi ga o-itami ni narimasu sō de . . . I hear you have a bad foot.

Omi-obi wa Takashimaya de. Better buy your **obi** at Takashimaya's.

Examples of **go**:

Go-ran kudasai. Please look!

Go-meiwaku demo o-negai itashi-masu. Although it may cause you trouble, may I ask a favor of you?

Go-kurō sama deshita. Thank you for your trouble.

7. The Prefix **su** usually means without any ornament or addition, but sometimes means non-possession, or without.

Examples of **su**:

O-keshō wo shi-ta yori mo su-gao no hō ga jōhin desu. An unpainted face is better taste than a painted one.

Mae wo tōri-mashita ga, su-dōri ni itashi-mashita. I passed in front of your house but did not stop.

Ōzon wo shi-te, su-de ni nat-te shimai-mashita. I suffered a great loss and have become penniless.

Ki means without artificiality.

Kono hen ni ki-gusuriya ga ari-masu ka? Is there a drug store in this vicinity?

Ki-soba mori hitotsu. Please give me a bowl of plain **soba** (noodles).

Ma means bareness or nakedness.

Ma-gokoro wo uchi-ake-te hanashi-mashita. Making bare my whole heart I have told him everything.

Ano dariya wa mak-ka desu. That dahlia is deep red.

Man-naka ni suwat-te iru hito wa donata desu ka? Who is the person sitting in the middle?

In the above sentences **makka** and **mannaka** have been formed euphonically from **ma-aka** and **ma-naka.**

Kara means empty, or without substance.

Manshū made kasegi ni it-temo kara-te de kaet-ta no de wa hanashi ni nara-nai. Even though he did go to Manchoukuo to work, it amounts to nothing if he returns empty handed.

Kara-uma ni kega wa ari-masen. A horse without a rider never gets hurt.

Kara-shōmon wo nigit-te yorokon-de iru. He is delighted to possess (even) an invalid bond.

Sora means false or mischievous.

Sora-goto wo iu. He tells lies.

Sora-byōki wo tsukat-te yasumi-mashita. Using feigned illness he absented himself.

Sora-ne. Pretended sleep.

Nama means incomplete, imperfect or a short interval of time.

Nama-monoshiri de nama-iki-na koto wo ii-masu. He is pedantic and talks conceitedly.

Nama-nie wo taberu-to atari-masu. You will get ill if you eat half-cooked food.

Furui mono no yō de naku, nama-atarashiku mie-masu. It does not look like an old one, but fresh and new.

Maru means complete, perfect.

Sakuya no kaji de maru-yake ni nari-mashita. It was completely burned by the fire last night.

Shihon mo dasa-zu ni, go-jū-man-yen maru-mōke to iu no wa sore desu ne. Half a million yen without any investment of capital! I call that a complete profit.

Omote ni shōji wo ire-naku-te wa ie no naka ga maru-mie desu. Unless you put **shōji** in front, the interior of the house will be completely exposed to view.

Ko means a little or somewhat.

Ko-gashikoi otoko desu zo. He is a clever man in a petty sense.

Ko-shakuna koto wo iu na. Don't say petty things!

Myōban no atsumari ni ko-jūnin wa atsumari-mashō to omoi-masu. I think there will be some ten persons (ten

persons or less) at tomorrow evening's meeting.

Hatsu means the first.

Kono yuki wa kotoshi no hatsu-yuki desu. This is the first snow of the year.

Hatsumono wo taberu to, shichijū-go nichi iki-nobiru-to mōshi-masu. They say one's life will be lengthened seventy five days if one eats the first food (of its kind).

Hatsu-tabi ni deru. I start on my first trip.

Fu or **bu** means negation.

Sonna mono wo soko ni narabe-te wa fu-teisai desu ne. It is unsightly to arrange such things in that place.

Oyaji ga fu-shōchi de Tōkyō e wa derare-masen deshita. As father disapproved I could not go to Tōkyō.

Are wa fu-shinsetsu-na otoko desu yo. He is certainly an unkind man.

Watakushi wa bu-kiyō desu kara umai shigoto wa deki-masen. As I am so awkward, I cannot do a delicate piece of work.

Anata no yōfuku wa ikanimo bu-kakkō desu ne. Your foreign suit is very ill-fitting.

Tojimari wo shi-nai to bu-yōjin desu. To have the doors unlocked is unsafe.

Mu means without.

Dono gakkō demo mu-seigen ni nyūgaku wo yurushi-ma-sen. There is no school which permits students to enter without limit.

Mu-shiken kentei. Official approval without examination.

Mu-rishi no o-kane wo dossari kari-tai mono desu. I should like to borrow a lot of money without interest.

8. **Setsubigo**, Suffixes, are attached to ends of other words to modify their meaning. Some Suffixes are used with **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Parts of Speech, and some with **Yōgen**, Declinable Parts of Speech. There are also Suffixes which, in combination, change **Taigen** into **Yōgen**, and vice versa. The chief Suffixes and their uses are explained in the following section.

9. Suffixes of the first group are used with **Taigen**, Non-declinable Words and remain as **Taigen**. **Sama** and **kun** show respect to other persons. **Sama** sometimes becomes **san** without change in meaning. **Kun** is used only by men, in a more or less familiar sense.

Danna-sama..... Master.
Oku-sama..... Mistress.
Mina-sama..... Gentlemen, or Ladies and Gentlemen.
Nakamura-kun..... Mr. Nakamura.

Kata, tachi, domo and **ra** signify persons, in a plural sense.

Sensei-gata..... teachers.
Go-fujin-gata..... ladies.
Anata-gata..... you.
Watakushi-tachi.. we.
Omae-tachi..... you (to social inferiors).
Watakushi-domo.. we.
Kozō-domo..... apprentice boys.
Kimi-ra..... you (used by men only, usually by students in a very familiar way).
Boku-ra..... we (corresponding to **kimi**, above).
Kodomo-ra..... children.

10. The second group of Suffixes are used with **Yōgen**, Declinable Words, the combined word becoming a **Taigen**, Non-declinable Word.

Sa and **mi** indicate condition, degree or abstract quality.

Umi no fuka-sa wo hakaru. To measure the depth of the sea.

Haba no hiro-sa wa take no naga-sa no hanbun desu. The width is half the length.

O-matsuri no nigiyaka-sa wa hijōna mono deshita. The gaiety of the religious festival was extraordinary.

Karusō ni mie-masu ga, nakanaka omo-mi ga ari-masu. Though it looks light, it is actually very heavy.

Hontō ni omoshiro-mi ga aru o-niwa desu koto. What a very interesting garden!

Watakushi wa jijitsu wo nigit-te iru no ga tsuyo-mi desu.

It is my strong point to have the facts in hand.

The difference between **sa** and **mi** is that **sa,** in the original sense, indicates quantity and **mi** feeling or taste. Therefore when expressing depth, in a way which can be measured, **fuka-sa** is used; but when expressing in a more indefinite way, the "feel" of depth, **fuka-mi** is used, as in **fuka-mi ni iru**, go into deep things. Words with the Suffixes **sa** or **mi** become **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Words. Words like **tanoshimi,** enjoyment, and **kurushimi**, pain, were originally Adjectives. **Tanoshii,** enjoyable and **kurushii,** hard, with the Suffix **mi,** are now regarded as Nouns, pure **Taigen,** Nondeclinable Words, not combinations of **Yōgen**, Declinable Words, with Suffixes.

Me means degree.

Mō sukoshi hikae-me ni shi-nai to shitsurei ni nari-masu. If you do not use a little more moderation, it will be impolite.

Kusuri wo itadaki-mashita ga, betsu ni kiki-me mo mie-masen. I have taken the medicine but no special effect is seen.

Nabe ni ireru ninjin wa hosoku naga-me ni kit-te kuda-sai. Please chop the carrots to be put in the pot into thin, long pieces.

Ke indicates condition.

Samu-ke ga suru. I feel chilly.

Nemu-ke samashi ni shōsetsu wo yomi-mashita. I read a novel to keep off my sleepiness.

11. The third group of Suffixes combine with other words to form **Yōgen**, Declinable Words. Group one of this class of Suffixes, **garu, buru** and **jimiru**, are declined as Verbs. **Garu** and **buru** are of the Four Column Inflection and **jimiru** of the One Column Inflection.

Garu means to appear or desire to do something.

Shibai wo mini yukita-gari-masu. She likes to go to the theatre.

Gakkō no keiko wo iya-gat-te komari-masu. I am distressed that he dislikes his school lessons.

Hetana kuse ni tokui-gat-te utai-masu. Though he is only a bungler he sings as if he were skillful.

Baru means to put on airs.

Nani mo shira-nai noni rikō-but-te i-masu. Although he knows nothing he puts on an air of wisdom.

Ikura jōhin-but-te mo gesu wa gesu desu yo. A vulgar man is a vulgar man after all, even if he does put on an elegant air.

Amari gakusha-bura-nai tokoro ga neuchi desu. His worth lies in that he does not assume the air of a learned man.

Jimiru means to resemble.

Otoko no kuse ni onna-jimi-ta koto wo ii-masu. Though he is a man he talks like a woman.

Sono sawagi wa nan desu, kichigai-jimi-te i-masu ne. What's this riot! it's like madness.

Kono shimagara wa kodomo-jimi-te iru de wa ari-masen ka? The stripes of this cloth are childish, aren't they?

12. **Rashii** means appears to be. As used here it is a Suffix, the combined word having the force of an Adjective. The same "**rashii**" when combined with Verbs is treated as an Auxiliary Verbs (see Chapter IX, Section 2).

Kodomo-rashii desu ne. It is childish.

Yamada-san-rashii kata ga o-tōri ni nari-mashita. Someone resembling Mr. Yamada passed by just now.

Ano shinbun no kiji wa hontō-rashū gozai-masu. The account in the newspaper seems to be true.

Gamashii means having the quality of (preceding word).

Katte-gamashii koto wo ie-ba dare demo iiki wa shi-masen. Nobody would be pleased to hear selfish remarks.

Tanin-gamashiku shi-nai de kudasai. Please don't behave like a stranger.

Gakusei no mibun de zeitaku-gamashii koto ga at-te wa nari-masen. As you are a student don't do anything that seems luxurious.

XV. CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES

1. As has been stated at the very beginning of this Grammar, the sentence is a combination of words to express definite ideas or feelings. It consists of two principal parts, the Subject, **Shubu**, and the Predicate, **Jutsubu,** without which no sentence is complete, no matter how many words it may contain.

ARRANGEMENT OF THE COMPONENT PARTS OF THE SENTENCE

2. The Subject of the sentence usually consists of a **Taigen** (体言), Nondeclinable Word, or word used as **Taigen**, followed by the **Joshi** (助詞), Auxiliary Word, **ga**. The Predicate, on the other hand, consists of a **Yōgen** (用言), Declinable Word, or words used as **Yōgen**, with **Joshi**, Auxiliary Word, or **Jodōshi** (助動詞), Auxiliary Verb. In the sentence, **Sakura no hana ga saki-mashita**, Cherry flowers blossomed out, the words **Sakura no hana**, cherry flowers, form the Subject of the sentence. To this the **Joshi**, **ga**, is connected and together they form the complete Subject. The Predicate is **saki-mashita**, blossomed out, which explains the action of the Subject. It consists of the Verb **saku**, (to) bloom, inflected in the Second Row, and the Auxiliary Verb **mashita.** In the sentence, **Inu to neko ga i-masu,** There are a dog and a cat, **Inu to neko ga** is the Subject and **i-masu** is the Predicate. In the sentence, **Jidōsha ni noru no ga abunai to iu no de wa ari-masen,** I don't say that it is dangerous to to ride in an automobile, **Jidōsha ni noru no ga** is the Subject and **abunai to iu no de wa ari-masen** is the Predicate. Although the form is somewhat different, in the sentence, **Kujira wa kemono de ari-masu,** A whale is an animal, **Kujira wa** is the Subject and **kemono de ari-masu** is the Predicate.

3. As a rule, the Subject-Word and related words form the Subject-Part of the sentence, and words explaining the action,

condition or meaning of the Subject Part form the Predicate-Part. Therefore the Predicate-Part is sometimes called the Explanatory-Part.

4. For the complete expression of ideas the Subject and the Predicate of the sentence usually require the assistance of supplementary words. For instance, the (incomplete) sentence, **Watakushi wa okuri-mashita,** I sent, has the Subject **Watakushi,** and the Predicate **okuri-mashita,** but the thing sent is unknown. If the words **tegami wo**, a letter, is inserted the meaning is a little clearer. If the additional words **Beikoku no haha ni**, to my mother in America, be added, the meaning becomes complete. These explanatory words **tegami wo** and **Beikoku no haha ni** are called the **Hobu** (補部), the Supplementary Part, as they supplement the Subject and the Predicate by making the sentence complete. The Supplementary Part consists, as does the Subject, of **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Word, or words used as **Taigen**, and **Joshi**, Postposition.

5. In brief, the Subject and the Predicate are the principal parts in the sentence; they are indispensable to the complete expression of ideas. Supplementary Parts are used when necessary to make the sentence complete.

Hi ga moe-te i-masu. The fire is burning.

Hon to chōmen to empitsu ga ari-masu. There are a book, a notebook and a pencil.

Takai yama ga mie-masu. A high mountain is seen.

Ueno no hana ga chirihajime-mashita. The cherry blossoms at Ueno have begun to fall.

Atama no ke wo kiru no ga hayari-masu. Bobbing the hair is now the fashion.

Watakushi ga Yamashita Yoshio desu. I am Yoshio Yamashita.

Imōto mo jōkyō shi-mashita. My sister has also come up to Tōkyō.

Zō wa ōkii. Elephants are large.

Kodomo bakari ki-mashita. Only children came.

All the above sentences consist of Subject and Predicate. The **Joshi**, Postposition, **ga**, usually accompanies the Subject,

but sometimes other Auxiliary Words may be used, as in the above examples.

6. The following examples are chosen as illustrative of sentences consisting of the Subject, the Predicate and the Supplementary Parts. With the **Taigen**, or word used as **Taigen**, such Postpositions as **ni** or **wo** are commonly used, but sometimes **e, yori, made** and **kara** and other Postpositions are also used.

Neko ga nezumi wo tori-mashita. The cat caught the rat.

Mina ga obentō wo tabe-mashita. They all ate their lunches.

Tōkyō kenbutsu no inakamono ga yūran jidōsha ni not-te i-masu. Countrymen seeing the sights of Tōkyō are in the sight-seeing bus.

Saru wa ningen ni ni-te i-masu. Monkeys look like men.

Ano hito wa rekishi ni akarui. That man is familiar with history.

Kisha ga teishaba ni tsuki-mashita. The train has reached the station.

Sensei ga seito ni bumpō wo oshie-masu. The teacher teaches the students grammar.

Kotoshi no natsu wa kyonen yori atsū gozai-masu. It is hotter this summer than the last.

SUPPOSITIVE AND INDEPENDENT WORDS

7. There are two more kinds of words which are indispensable on some occasions to the completion of the sentence. The first kind is called **Sōshugo** (總主語), General Master Word, an example of which is found in the sentence **Kono heya wa iriguchi ga semō-gozai-masu,** This room has a narrow entrance. **Iriguchi ga semō-gozai-masu** is in itself a sentence, with **Iriguchi ga** as the Subject and **semō-gozai-masu** as the Predicate. **Kono heya wa** is the thought Subject of the whole sentence, with the succeeding clause as Predicate. This expression, **Kono heya wa** is the **Sōshugo.**

8. Words used as **Sōshugo** are Appositives. With **Sōshugo,** the Postposition **wa** is commonly used, but sometimes **mo,**

demo, sae and **koso**, etc. are used:

Sono nimotsu wa kurumaya ga mot-te mairi-mashita, That luggage, a **rikisha** man has brought it.

Kyō wa tenki ga yoku-te kekkō de gozai-masu. Today, the weather is splendid.

Fujinkwai de o-hanashi wo nasat-ta kata wa sei ga hikū gozai-mashita. At the women's meeting the person who spoke was short of stature.

Ano omocha wa ojii-san ga kat-te kudasai-mashita. That toy, grandfather kindly bought it for me.

Kono ko mo me no iro ga kuroi desu ne. This child also has black eyes.

Watakushi dake futokoro ga sabishii. I am the only one whose pocket is light (lonely).

In the above examples, **Sono nimotsu wa, Kyō wa, Fujinkwai de o-hanashi wo nasat-ta kata wa, Ano omocha wa, Kono ko mo,** and **Watakushi dake** are all **Sōshugo.**

9. The second kind of additional words sometimes necessary to sentence construction are called **Dokuritsugo** (獨立語), Independent Words. They have no relation to the principal parts of the sentence; they are used to express emotions or to call the attention of others.

Aa! katsudōshashin wo mi-te omoshiro kat-ta. Ah! seeing movies was interesting!

Sore! ki wo tsuke-te i-nai to tsumazuki-masu yo. There! if you do not look out you'll stumble!

O! sō-sō. Oh yes, I remember.

Nani! nan demo nai. No! it's nothing.

O-hana-san, kono tokei wo danna-sama no tsukue no ue e yat-te kudasai. O-hana-san, please put this watch on the master's desk.

Take ya! hayaku okatte wo katazuke-te o-yasumi-nasai. Take! do the kitchen work quickly and go to bed.

In the above examples, **Aa, sore, o, nani, o-hana-san** and **Take ya** are **Dokuritsugo,** Independent Words. They are mostly Interjections and words of address.

10. In the construction of sentences the arrangement of the

five parts, i.e. **Shubu**, the Subject, **Jutsubu**, the Predicate, **Hobu**, the Supplementary Parts, **Sōshugo**, General Master Words, and **Dokuritsugo,** Independent Words, is generally as follows: The Subject comes first and the Predicate at the last; if the Supplementary Part is necessary it is placed in between the Subject and Predicate. **Sōshugo** and **Dokuritsugo** are placed before the Subject-Part.

Kotori ga (Subject) **naki-masu** (Predicate). Little birds sing.

Kasa to kaban ga (Subject) **oi-te ari-masu** (Predicate). An umbrella and a bag are (put) here.

Heya ga (Subject) **semaku-te** (Predicate) **piano no okiba ga** (Subject) **ari-masen** (Predicate). The room is narrow and there is no place for the piano.

Kyōkai no yane ga (Subject) **mori no mukō ni** (Supplementary Part) **mie-te i-masu** (Predicate). The roof of the church is seen beyond the forest.

Shichi hachi-tō no inu ga (Subject) **kodomo wo nose-ta sori wo** (Supplementary Part) **hii-te hashit-te ki-mashita** (Predicate). Seven or eight dogs came running, pulling a sled with a child in it.

Saru ga (Subject) **kani ni** (Supplementary Part) **kaki no tane wo** (Supplementary Part) **morai-mashita** (Predicate). The monkey got a persimmon seed from the crab.

Tōkyō wa (**Sōshugo**) **jinkō ga** (Subject) **ōi** (Predicate). Tōkyō has a large population.

Fuyu wa (**Sōshugo**) **yuki ga** (Subject) **furi-masu** (Predicate). In winter snow falls.

Kimi (Independent Word), **anata wa** (Subject) **dochira e** (Supplementary Part) **yuki-masu ka**? (Predicate). Hey fellow! Where are you going?

Ara! (Independent Word) **ōkina inu ga** (Subject) **tobi-dashi-mashita** (Predicate). Look! A huge dog jumped out.

ORDER OF COMPONENT PARTS OF SENTENCES

11. The above is the usual way of arrangement, but it is by no means a hard and fast rule. Sometimes the positions of

these parts are reversed, as when emphasis is placed on one particular word, when it is desired to give a special tone to the sentence, or when the attention of another person is called. This transposition is frequent in the composition of songs.

Fut-ta, fut-ta, yuki ga. Fallen, fallen, the snow.

Saita, sai-ta, hana ga. Blossomed, blossomed, the flowers.

In the above two sentences, which appear in a children's song, the order of the Predicate and the Subject is reversed. The natural order would be, **Yuki ga fut-ta** and **Hana ga sai-ta.** In daily conversation there are some expressions in which the order of the Subject and the Predicate is reversed.

12. As the Supplementary Part, or Parts, **Taigen** or words used as **Taigen,** with the Postpositions **ni** and **wo,** are commonly used, but the order of arrangement varies. Although some insist that the **Taigen** with **ni** must come before that with **wo,** this is by no means absolute. For example, **Hahaoya ga kodomo ni mikan wo yari-mashita,** The mother gave the child an orange, is undoubtedly the correct order. But if the stress is put not on **kodomo,** the one to whom the orange was given, but on the thing given, the order is often reversed: **Hahaoya ga mikan wo kodomo ni yari-mashita,** The mother gave an orange to the child. It would be wrong to state that the order of this sentence is incorrect.

OMISSION OF PARTS OF SENTENCES

13. In this and the following sections the omission of one or two constituent parts of the sentence will be considered. The aim in sentence construction is to make the meaning clear. Therefore if not essential to the meaning, it is not necessary to have all three parts, Subject, Predicate and Supplementary Parts. Frequent omissions of one or other of the three parts occur in daily conversation.

Nanda! sore wa. What is it? that!

Mō kaet-ta no, Tarō-san wa. Has he gone (or come back) Tarō-san?

Gaitō wo ki-te irasshai yo, kaze wo hiki-masu kara. Put

your overcoat on, as you may catch cold.

Mat-te oide nasai, gakkō no mon no tokoro de ne. Please wait, at the school gate.

Kita, ki-ta, chindonya no gyōretsu ga. They've come, they've come! the procession of street-advertisers.

14. In the sentence, **Kumot-te ki-mashita ga mata furi-masu ka ne,** It has clouded up, I wonder if it's going to rain again, there is no use in pointing out that before **Kumot-te ki-mashita ga** the Subject **sora ga,** sky, is omitted, and before **furi-masu ka ne** the Subject **ame ga,** rain, is omitted. The full form of **Dōzō o-hairi-kudasai,** Please come in, would be **Dōzō anata wa watakushi no heya ni o-hairi kudasai,** You will please come into my room. The full form of **Sono uchi ni o-tazune itashi-masu,** Will call on you soon, would be **Sono uchi ni watakushi wa anata no o-taku wo o-tazune itashi-masu,** In the near future I shall call at your home. The abbreviated form, **Shinnen omedetō,** Happy New Year, would be **Shinnen de omedetō gozai-masu.** Nobody, however, would think of using such tedious expressions in daily conversation. Abridged expressions are common in daily conversation. In them lie charm and brevity.

HONORIFIC WORDS

15. In Japan the use of **Keigo** (敬語), Honorifics, in daily conversation is very highly developed. There are special Honorifics and related expressions for the first, second and third person. These varied forms are freely used, according to the status and relationship of speaker and the person addressed. It is not necessary, therefore, to use such personal pronouns as **anata,** you, for the second person, and **watakushi,** I, for the first. If one merely says **Irasshai-mase,** I am glad you have come, **O-meshi-kudasai,** Please put it on, and **Yuki-tamae,** You had better go, it is clear that they are meant for the second person. In the forms **It-te mairi-masu,** I am going, **O-jama itashi-mashita,** I have troubled you, and **O-itoma itashi-mashita,** I must now take leave, it is clear each time that the speaker is meant. If we were to use **anata,**

you, or **watakushi**, I, each time, in cases like the above, the charm of conversation would be seriously impaired.

16. Generally speaking it is quite usual in Japanese conversation to omit some elements unless the meaning is thereby lost. In the question, **Konban no ongakukai e o-ide ni nari-masu ka?** Are you going to the concert tonight? the Subject **anata**, you, is omitted. The natural answer is **Hai, mairi-masu** Yes, I am going, or **Iie, mairi-masen**, No, I am not going. It is not common to say **Hai watakushi wa konban no ongakukai e mairi-masu,** Yes, I am going to the concert tonight, or **Iie, watakushi wa konban no ongakukai e mairi-masen,** No, I am not going to the concert tonight. In other words both the Subjective and the Supplementary Parts are omitted in the answer. Most frequently only the important part is expressed, all else being omitted, particularly in answer to questions.

17. The following are examples of abridged expressions in common use. The meaning, however, is quite clear to both the speaker and the person spoken to, as the important part is not omitted:

Hara ga het-ta yo, sugu meshi ni shi-te kure. I am hungry, please have the meal ready at once.

Ima kaet-te ki-te, wafuku ni nat-ta tokoro da. I came home just now and got into Japanese clothes.

Entotsu no susu ga tamat-ta kara, sōji ni koi to it-te kudasai. Please tell the chimney-sweep to come and clean the chimney as it is filled with soot.

Asoko wa ureru mise desu. That shop is doing good business.

Shirase ga mairi-mashi-te, konban yakō de tachi-masu. A notice has come and I am leaving on the night express train.

Ukagai-mashō to mōshi-mashi-tara, kuru to ossharu mono desu kara, o-machi shi-te i-masu ga, mada mie-masen. When I said I would call on him, he said he would come to my house, so I have been waiting for him, but he has not yet appeared.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES BY IDEAS

18. The three forms of conversational sentences will next be considered. The first is used to define the nature, feeling, etc. of material and immaterial things. Generally speaking, sentences of this kind have as Predicate, Adjectives or adjectival expressions. To be more definite, they are usually answers to the question **Donna ka**? How? as in the question **Kyō no tenki wa donna ka?** How is the weather today? to which the answer is, **Uttoshū gozai-masu**, It is gloomy.

Fuji-san wa takō gozai-masu. Mt. Fuji is high.

Kono niku wa kataku-te ha mo tachi-masen. This meat is so tough that I cannot chew it.

Sonna hanashi de wa, aite ni naru no ga bakabakashii de wa ari-masen ka? Isn't it foolish to be a party to such a conversation as that?

Konashi mo iishi, kaodachi mo ii ga, oshii koto ni wa iro ga kuroi ne. She has good bearing and good features, but it's too bad that her skin is not fair.

Ano hito no kao wa nagaku-te uma no yō da ne. The face of that man is so long that it looks like that of a horse.

19. The second class of conversational sentences, which describe the actions of material and immaterial things, usually have Verbs as Predicates. In other words, these sentences answer the question **Dō suru ka**? What does it(he) do?

Kanai jū de rajio wo kii-te i-masu. All the family are listening to the radio.

Nashi ya ringo ga kudamonoya no mise ni naran-de i-masu. Pears and apples are on show at the fruit-store.

Kaze ga fui-te umi ga aredashi-mashita. The wind is blowing and the sea has become rough.

Kinobori no jōzu-na saru ga ki kara ochi-mashita. The monkey, skilful as it is at climbing trees, has fallen out of a tree.

Ginza e it-ta ga Olympic de kashi wo kau no wo wasure-te ki-ta. I went to Ginza, but forgot to buy cakes at the

Olympic.

20. The third class of conversational sentences, which answer the question **Nan de aru ka**? What is it, are affirmative expressions formed by using the Postposition **de** with **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Words, or words used as **Taigen**. Such sentences usually take the form **Nani nani de aru**, It is so and so. The following sentences illustrate this kind of affirmative (or interrogative) sentences with **de**:

Yamamoto-san wa daigaku no kyōju desu. Mr. Yamamoto is a college professor.

Tora wa neko no kyōdaibun da. The tiger is brother to the cat.

Kono soramoyō de wa mata ame da-rō. From the appearance of the sky it is likely to rain again.

Watakushi no yukusaki wa tengoku ka ne, jigoku ka ne? Is my destination Heaven or Hell?

In the above examples **desu** and **da** are both abbreviations of **de ari-masu**, therefore the Postposition **de** is combined in both forms. **De** is omitted only where **ka**, in direct or implied questions, is connected with **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Words. In combination, the above three kinds of expressions are used in order of arrangement, sometimes at the beginning, sometimes at the end and sometimes in the middle of sentences. This free use of varied forms and order of arrangement gives tone to conversation and makes the meaning clear.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES BY STRUCTURE

21. The different kinds of sentences will next be explained. In order to arrange complicated ideas in the best order, with clarity and accuracy, it is natural that the order of the component parts of the sentence be frequently reversed or repeated according to the need, therefore sentences are cast in one of three different molds.

22. In the first kind of sentences the connection of the Subjective Part and the Predicate Part occurs only once, i.e. there is but one Subject and one Predicate. This is called a **Tanbun** (單文), Simple Sentence; for instance the sentence

Hon ga ari-masu, There is a book, consists of the Subject **Hon ga** and thePredicate **ari-masu.** This is the simplest kind of sentence. But **Empitsu to chōmen ga ari-masu,** There are a pencil and a note-book, is also a **Tanbun**, having **Empitsu to chōmen ga** as the Subject and **ari-masu** as the Predicate. The form **Imo ya negi ya ninjin ga dai-dokoro no yasaibako ni ire-te ari-masu**, Potatoes, onions, and carrots are in the vegetable box in the kitchen, is also a simple sentence, with **Imo ya negi ya ninjin ga** as the Subject, **ire-te ari-masu** as the Predicate and **daidokoro no yasaibako ni** as the Supplementary Part. The connection of the Subject with the Predicate occurs only once in these sentences, i.e. there is but one Subject and one Predicate.

23. Examples of sentences belonging to the first kind of **Tanbun**, Simple Sentences, answering the question **Donna ka?** How?

O-hitori de o-sabishū gozai-mashō. Left all alone you must feel forlorn.

Kisha yori jidōsha de iku hō ga hayai-deshō. It will probably be quicker to go by an automobile than by train.

Ano semai yokochō wa nitchū demo kurai-desu ne. In that side-street it is dark even in the daytime.

Senjitsu otaku de chōdai itashi-mashita osashimi wa oishū gozai-mashita. The osashimi (sliced raw fish) which I had at your house the other day was delicious.

O-taku de wa o-tō-sama mo o-kā-sama mo Take-chan mo Yō-chan mo mina-san ga go-kigen yoku irasshai-masu ka? Are your father, mother, Take-chan and Yō-chan all well?

24. Examples of the second kind of Simple Sentences, which answer the question **Dō suru ka?** What does he (it) do?

Tarō to Hanako ga ehon wo mi-te i-masu. Tarō and Hanako are looking at a picture-book.

Watakushi wa kono natsu Fuji to Asama ni nobori-mashita. I climbed Mt. Fuji and Mt. Asama last summer.

Umeko wa taisō yorokon-de ikinari haha no te wo nigiri-mashita. Umeko was much delighted and suddenly clasped her mother's hand.

Kyōto kara not-ta o-kyaku san wa Yokohama no tsugi no teishaba de ori-mashita. The passenger who got on at Kyōto left the train at the next station after Yokohama.

Sanbashi no migigawa ni tsunai-de aru ōkina kisen wa ima America yuki no kiito wo tsumikon-de i-masu. The large steamship moored at the right side of the pier is now loading raw-silk for America.

25. Examples of sentences belonging to the third kind of Simple Sentences, answering the question **Nan de aru-ka?** What is it?

Sakanaya no tonari ga yaoya de ari-masu. Next door to the fish monger is the green grocer.

Dōbutsuen de mi-ta ichi-ban ōkina kemono ga zō da yo. The largest animal you saw at the Zoo was an elephant.

Mon no mae wo misuborashii nari de urouro shi-te i-ta no ga sono yatsu desu. It is the fellow who was prowling about in front of the gate in shabby clothes.

Sorya nan desu ka? What is that?

Kōmori wa tori da-rō ka? I wonder if the bat is a bird?

26. The second kind of sentences is the **Fukubun** (複文), Complex Sentence. It has already been explained that in the Simple Sentence the connection of the Subject with the Predicate occurs only once, i.e. there is only one clause. In the Complex Sentence, on the other hand, the connection of the Subject with the Predicate takes place more than once, i.e. there are two or more clauses; but one or more of the clauses loses its independence by becoming subordinate to the main clause in order to complete its meaning. If one examines the sentence **Tenki ga ii kara kasa wa iri-masen,** I(we) do not need an umbrella as the weather is fine, there are two Subjects and two Predicates. The first clause is **Tenki ga ii,** with **kasa wa** as the Subject and **iri-masen** as the Predicate. These two clauses are joined into one sentence by **kara.** The word

kara plays the double role of combining the two parts, **Tenki ga ii**, The weather is fine, and **kasa wa iri-masen**, and indicating the reason why I do not need an umbrella. Therefore the first part of this sentence loses its independence and becomes subordinate to the second part.

27. In the Complex Sentence the part which becomes subordinate to the other part, or parts, having lost its independence, is called a **ku** (句), Clause.

28. Sentences containing clauses introduced by such **Joshi**, Auxiliary Words, as **kara, ga, to, keredomo, ba, ni, node, nagara** and **dake** are all Complex Sentences.

Mō jū-ji desu kara, yasumi-mashō. As it is already ten o'clock let us go to bed.

Dempō wo uchi-mashita kara, kochira no daitai no ikō wa wakat-te i-masu. As I have sent a telegram he understands the gist of our views.

O-tazune ni nari-mashita kara, issai mōshiage-te oki-mashita. Because he asked me I told him about it in detail.

Daiku-san ga shūzen ni kakari-mashita ga, nakanaka te ga kakari-masu. The carpenter(s) has(have) started the repairs, but it will require a great deal of labour.

Genkan ni geta ga nui-de ari-masu ga donata desu ka? There's a pair of geta at the entrance, but whose are they?

Yoku tenki ga tsuzuki-masu ga, chitto furase-tō gozai-masu. The fine weather continues, but we need a little rain.

Koko kara miru-to, gijidō ga mashōmen desu ne. Looking from here, the Parliament Building seems to be right in front of us, doesn't it?

Jochū ga daidokoro no shōji wo akeru-to, neko ga tobi-dashi-mashita. When the maid opened the paper doors of the kitchen, a cat jumped out.

Mochiageru-to, koware-te i-mashita. When I lifted it, it was already broken.

Katsudō ni yuki-mashita keredo, amari omoshiroku ari-

masen deshita. I went to a movie, but it was not very interesting.

Kinjo de kii-ta keredomo wakari-masen-deshita. I inquired in the neighborhood, but could not find out.

Nedan wa yasui keredomo futokoroguai ga waruku-te— Although the price is cheap, my funds are low. . . . .

Watakushi ga yu-ke-ba anata mo oide-ni nari-masu ka? If I go will you go, too?

San-ji made ni tsuke-ba go-ji ni maniai-masu. If I arrive by three o'clock I shall be in time for (the) five o'clock (engagement).

San-nen tate-ba, akago mo mit-tsu ni naru. When three years pass, even a new-born baby becomes three years old.

Sekkaku o-tazune shi-ta noni, mina-san ga orusu deshita. Although I made a special call, you were all out.

Annani tanon-de oi-ta noni, zuibun musekinin desu ne. Although I entreated him in such earnestness, he is very irresponsible, isn't he?

Tochū kara jidōsha ni not-ta node, yat-to maniai-mashita. As I got into a car on the way, I was just in time.

Tetsudat-te kudasat-ta node, hayaku katazuki-mashita. As you kindly helped me, it is finished quickly.

Yakusoku wo shi-nagara, wasure-te shimat-te i-rassharu. Although he had promised, he has entirely forgotten it.

Kozō wa miseban wo shi-nagara, gūgū fune wo koi-de i-ru. Although he is supposed to be tending shop, that apprentice is snoring away as if rowing a boat.

Shinamono ga ii dake, nedan mo yasuku ari-masen. As the goods are excellent, the price is not cheap.

29. The following are also examples of Complex Sentences.

Watakushi ga Beikoku wo shisatsu ni it-ta nowa, mō jū-nen mae deshita. Ten years have already passed since I went on an inspection trip to America.

Tokidoki nihonshoku wo itadaku koto ga ari-masu. Frequently I take Japanese meals.

Niwa no ume no ki ni uguisu ga i-te, eda kara eda e tobi-utsut-te, nai-te i-masu. There is a nightingale on a plum tree in the garden, singing as it jumps from branch to branch.

In the above examples, the clauses **Watakushi ga Beikoku wo shisatsu ni it-ta, Tokidoki Nipponshoku wo itadaku** and **Niwa no ume no ki ni uguisu ga i-te** all help in completing the sentences, but although they have both Subject and Predicate they are not independent; they are subordinate clauses in Complex Sentences.

30. The third kind of sentences is the **Jūbun** (重文), Compound Sentence. These consist of two or more Simple Sentences and have more than one clause, as do Complex Sentences. The difference between Compound and Complex Sentences is that in the Complex Sentence, one clause of the sentence loses its independence and becomes subordinate to the other, while in the Compound Sentence both clauses are correlative. For instance, the sentence **Hana ga saki, tori ga naku,** Flowers bloom, birds sing, contains two simple sentences **Hana ga saki** and **Tori ga naku,** each having a Subject and Predicate. Neither of these two sentences, however, is subordinate to the other; each becomes an independent sentence when separated from the other. In other words, this sentence is composed of two sentences of equal value. This constitutes a Compound Sentence, as may be seen in the following examples:

Noda-kun wa Beikoku e yuki, Yamashita-kun wa Shina e it-ta. Mr. Noda went to America and Mr. Yamashita went to China.

Haru wa atatakaku, aki wa suzushii. Spring is warm and autumn is cool.

Kaze wa hageshiku fui-te, ame mo tsuyoku furidashi-mashita. The wind blew fiercely and the rain began to pour down.

Kore wa tokuhon de, sore wa jibiki desu. This is a reader, that is a dictionary.

Eigo mo hanasushi, Futsugo mo jōzu-rashii. He speaks

English and also seems to be fluent in French.

Kane wa aru-shi, ichi wa ii-shi, jinbutsu mo ii. He has money, a good position and an excellent personality.

Kondo no ie wa zashiki ga takusan at-te, hiatari ga ii. The new house has plenty of rooms and it is sunny.

O-kyaku-san mo mie-zu, kore to iu shigoto mo ari-masen. We have no customers and no work to speak of.

31. As stated above there are three forms of sentences, but these are by no means used separately. In order to express complicated ideas the different forms are intermingled in any order, according to the occasion.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES BY NATURE

32. From the standpoint of the nature of sentences, they are divided into four classes. The first class are used in describing material and immaterial things. Such sentences are called **Heijō-tai** (平常體), Descriptive Sentences.

Amari omoshiroi node, jikan mo wasure-te i-mashita. It was so interesting that I was not realizing the passing of time.

Are ga Katō-san no o-taku desu. That is Mr. Kato's house.

Heya no chūō ni tēburu ga oi-te at-te, sono shūi ni wa ikutsu mo no isu ga narabe-te ari-masu. The table is placed in the center of the room and many chairs are arranged around it.

Fumoto no semai michi wo nobot-te, tanima ni sot-te hidari no kodakai tokoro ni deru to, nagame no hiroi tokoro ni nari-masu. If one climbs the narrow path at the foot of the mountain and goes along the valley to a hill on the left, a wide vista opens out before him.

Kyonen no natsu wa Shina ryokō wo itashi-mashi-te, Shanghai kara Peiping made mairi-mashita. Last summer I made a trip to China, travelling from Shanghai to Peiping.

33. The second kind of sentences, called **Gimon-tai** (疑問體), Interrogative Sentence, express interrogation or irony.

Kondo no teishaba wa doko desu ka? What is the next

station?

Osumai wa dochira desu ka? Where is your home?

Nani ga osuki ka? What do you like?

Anata wa sennen London de ome ni kakat-ta Yoshida San de wa ari-masen ka? Are you not Mr. Yoshida whom I met in London a few years ago?

Omoikit-te kotowat-tara dō desu? How about refusing it boldly?

34. The third class of sentences is the **Meirei-tai** (命令體), Imperative Sentences.

Guzuguzu shi-nai de, sugu ni oide-nasai. Please come at once, without any hesitation.

Goran nasai! man-marui tsuki ga de-mashita. Look! the full round moon has come out.

Kaban wo mot-te ki-te kudasai. Please bring my bag.

Kotowari nashi ni wa hait-te wa ike-nai. Don't enter without asking permission.

Hayaku shiro! Do it quickly!

35. The fourth class of sentences are **Kandō-tai** (感動体), Exclamatory Sentences.

Mā! utsukushii hana desu ne. Oh, what a beautiful flower!

Oyaoya! machigat-te shimat-ta wa. Dear me! I have done wrong (made a mistake).

Naruhodo, sō sure-ba, yoroshii desu ne. I see, if I do so it will be all right.

Ara! mezurashii. Oh, how unexpected (of a guest)!

Yoku mo konna ni jōzu ni deki-mashita koto. How well you have finished it!

KINDS OF MODIFIERS

36. In the construction of sentences the component elements, as has just been explained, are used in combinations differing as to form, kind and nature. One more important thing is to use modifying words which will make the meaning clear and definite.

37. **Hana ga saku** is a Simple Sentence of Description, with Subject and Predicate. It answers the question **Dō suru ka**? What does he(it) do? The meaning of the sentence is clear, but in order to indicate the kind of a flower some additional word is necessary. Furthermore, though it is clear that the flower is blooming, how it is blooming is not expressed. Therefore if one adds the words **akai**, red, **hana**, flower, and **utsukushiku**, beautifully, to **saku**, the sentence becomes **Akai hana ga utsukushiku saku**, Red flowers are blooming beautifully. The second sentence conveys a satisfying sense of clearness. **Akai**, added to **hana**, and **utsukushiku** to **saku**, are modifying words.

38. There are two ways of sentence modification. One way is to modify **Taigen**; the other is to modify **Yōgen**. In the sentence given in the last section, **Akai hana ga utsukushiku saku, akai** modifies a **Taigen**, **hana**, and **utsukushiku** modifies a **Yōgen, saku**. The former is called a **Keiyōshi-teki Shūshoku** (形容詞的修飾), Adjectival Modifier.

39. All Adjectives modify **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Words, and are used in **Keiyōshi-teki Shūshoku**, Adjectival Modifiers.

Okii tori ga ton-de ki-mashita. A large bird came flying.

Omoshiroi koto wo iu hito desu ne. Doesn't he say funny things?

Yoku no fukai jiisan da. What a greedy old man!

In the above examples **ōkii**, large, **omoshiroi**, funny, and **yoku no fukai**, greedy, modify the **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Words, **tori**, bird, **koto**, things, and **jiisan**, old man, respectively.

40. Besides Adjectives, words followed by the **Joshi**, Postpositions, **na** and **no**, also Verbs of the Third Inflection and of the Conclusive Form, preceding **Taigen**, are used as **Keiyōshi-teki Shūshoku**, Adjectival Modifiers.

Kirei-na ehagaki, A beautiful picture post card.

Dokoka de o-me ni kakat-ta koto no aru-yō-na kata desu. He seems to be a man whom I have met somewhere.

Mukō no michi no soba ni ishijizō ga ari-masu. By the side of the road over yonder there is a stone image of

Jizō.

Gakkō no mae no michibata no sakura no hana ga hokorobisome-mashita. The cherry blossoms by the roadside in front of the school are beginning to bloom.

Tōku no yamayama ga byōbu wo tate-ta yō-ni mie-ru. The distant mountains look like artistic screens placed in order.

Hatake no mannaka ni tat-te i-ta nōfu ga arukidashi-mashita. The farmer who was standing upright in the middle of the field has started walking.

Naku ko ni wa kate-masen. One cannot conquer a crying child.

In the above examples, **kirei-na**, pretty, **aru yona**, seems to be, **mukō no michi no**, the road over there, **Gakkō no mae no michibata no**, on the roadside in front of the school, **Tōku no**, distant, **tat-te i-ta**, was standing upright, and **naku**, crying, are Adjectival Modifiers.

Numerals are also used as Adjectival Modifiers. In the following sentence, **Empitsu wo san-bon kai-mashita**, I bought three pencils, **san-bon**, three, modifies **empitsu**. The sentence has the same meaning as **San-bon no empitsu wo kai-mashita.**

41. In **Fukushi-teki Shūshoku** (副詞的修飾), Adverbial Modifiers, Adverbs are commonly used to modify **Yōgen**, Declinable Words.

Kitto oide ni nari-masu. Surely he will come.

Kyū ni kaet-te irasshai-mashita. Suddenly he came back.

Potsuri potsuri hiroiyomi shi-mashita. I spelled it through bit by bit.

In the above examples **kitto**, surely, **kyū ni**, suddenly, and **potsuri potsuri**, bit by bit, are all Adverbs; they modify **oide-ni nari-masu** will come, **kaet-te irasshai-mashita**, came back, and **hiroiyomi**, spell through, respectively.

42. Besides Adverbs, words introduced by various **Joshi**, Postpositions, are used as **Fukushi-teki Shūshoku**, Adverbial Modifiers.

Mezurashii kudamono wo takusan chōdai itashi-mashita. I have received many rare fruits.

Yuki no yōna shiroi hada, Skin as white as snow.

Te ni toru-yō ni kikoe-te ki-masu. It sounds as if it were so near one could almost grasp it in one's hands.

Wasure-ta yō ni potsunen to suwat-te iru. He is sitting all alone in an absent-minded manner.

Eda ga oreru hodo mi ga nari-mashita. The tree bore so much fruit that its branches bend to breaking.

Asa kara ban made hatarakizume-desu. From morning till night he works unceasingly.

Nezumi ga sawagu-node nemure-masen. The rats make so much noise that I cannot sleep.

Tenki ni nat-ta kara dekake-mashō. As the weather has become fine let us be going.

Mada hayai to ii-nagara dekake-te yuki-mashita. He went out saying it was still early.

Fuke-ba tobi-sōna yase-ta otoko. The man is so thin that he might be blown away.

Kaimono ni yuki-masu ga go-yō wa ari-masen ka? I am going out shopping now, can I do anything for you?

Dekiru dake o-sewa itashi-mashō. I shall look after him as well as I can.

Kii-temo wakara-nai. I cannot understand even if I hear about it.

Ame ga fut-te michi ga waruku nat-ta. Rain has fallen and the roads have became bad.

In the above sentences the words introduced by **ni, hodo, kara, made, nagara, ba, dake, temo** and **te,** all modify **Yōgen,** Declinable Words.

43. Adjectival modifiers do not necessarily modify **Taigen,** Nondeclinable Words, in the Subjective or Supplementary Parts of the sentence only; neither do Adverbial Modifiers modify **Yōgen,** Declinable Words in the Predicate Part only. Both kinds modify **Taigen,** Nondeclinable Words, and **Yōgen,** Declinable Words, respectively, in subordinate clauses of the sentence.

Akisudorobō ga ura no mado kara shinobikon-de, oku-

zashiki no hikidashi ni at-ta tokei ya pin ya kubikazari nado wo sarat-te, omote ni tobidashi-ta tokoro wo soko-ra wo mimawashi-nagara nosori nosori arui-te i-ta junsa ni tsukamae-rare-mashita. A thief stole into the house from the back window and grabbed a watch, pins, and necklace in the drawer of a desk in the back room, but when he jumped out on to the front street, he was seized by a policeman walking in an unhurried manner and looking around the neighborhood.

In the above sentence the principal parts are **akisudorobō ga**, sneak thief; **shinobikon-de**, stole into; **tokei ya pin ya kubikazari nado wo sarat-te**, grabbed a watch, pins and necklace; **tokoro wo**, the time when; **junsa ni tsukamae-rare-mashita**, was seized by a policeman. All the rest are Modifiers. **Ura no**, back, modifies **shinobikon-de**, stole into; **tsukue no**, of the desk, modifies **hikidashi**, drawer; and **okuzashiki no hikidashi ni at-ta**, in the drawer of the desk in the back room, modifies **tokei ya pin ya kubikazari**, a watch, pins and necklaces. Then **omote ni tobi-dashita**, jumped out on to the front street, modifies **tokoro wo**, at the time when. But **sokora wo mimawashi-nagara**, looking around the neighborhood, modifies **junsa**, policeman. Moreover **ura no mado kara**, from the back window, modifies the **Yōgen**, Declinable Word, **shinobikon-de**, stole into, and therefore is an Adverbial Modifier; but **ura no**, back, modifying **mado**, window, is an Adjectival Modifier, as **mado** is a **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Word. The character of other modifiers may be judged from these examples.

44. As to the order of Modifiers of either **Taigen**, Nondeclinable Words or **Yōgen**, Declinable Words, they are generally placed before the words they modify.

Gijidō no takai tō ga mukō no mori no ue ni mie-masu. The high tower of the Parliament Building is seen above the woods over yonder.

The principal part of the above sentence is **tō ga mie-masu**, a tower is seen. **Takai**, high, modifies **tō**, tower, and is placed

before **tō**. **Giji-dō no**, of the Parliament Building, modifies **takai tô**, high tower, and is placed before the latter. **Mori no ue ni**, above the woods, modifying **mie-masu**, is seen, and **mukō no**, over there, modifying **mori**, woods, all precede the words they modify. This is the usual rule for Modifiers.

45. However complicated the conversational expression of one's ideas may be, it may by the use of the Principal and Supplementary Parts be so arranged as to clearly convey one's thoughts. The addition of Modifiers further facilitates the communication of one's ideas and makes them more clearly understood.

INDEX

AND

GLOSSARY

INDEX

Adjectives 7, 35
Inflection of 35-39; First Inflection of 37; Second Inflection of 38; Third Inflection of 38
Adverbs 7, 153
of Time 153; of Method 153; of Quantity 154; of Degree 154; of Manner 154; Position of 155
Adverbial Phrases 155
Auxiliary Numerical Words 21
use of tsu 21; use of ka 22; Counting persons 23; Counting in pairs 25; Counting two or more things 25; Counting with the idea of both 25; Fractional Numbers 25; Ratio 26; Percentages 26; Computation of Interest 26; Computation of Times or Multiplications 26; Various kinds of 26-30; Order, Rank and Grade 30-1; Interrogative 31-3
Auxiliary Verbs 6, 7, 67
Inflection of 68; Affirmative and Negative 68, 83; Common form 68; Passive form 68; Causative form 69; Passive Causative form 71; of Supposition 72; of Hope 76; of Possibility 72, 78; of Declaration 80; use of desu, de aru, and da 80; of Present 82; of Past 82-3; of Future 82-3; of Continuation 84, 85, 91; of Continued Action 84, 85, 91; of Continued State 85, 87, 90, 91; of Completed Action and Perfect Tense 92
Auxiliary Words 6, 7
Appositives 170
Arrangement of Component Parts of Sentence 168
Classification of Sentences 176, 177, 183
by Ideas 176; by Structure 177; by Nature 183
Column 42
Complex Sentence 182
Compound Sentence 179
Conjunctions 8, 150
Adding one or more thoughts 150; of Indefinite Alternative 151; of jointing two or more Sentences 152; of Contrary Meaning 152
Construction of Sentences 168
Declinable Parts of Speech 6, 7, 41, 168
Descriptive Sentence 183
Euphony 39, 51
in Adjectives 39; in Verbs 51
Exclamatory Sentence 184
Fifty Sounds (Syllables) 43
General Master Word 170
Honorifics 33, 54, 94, 174
in Numerical Words 33; in Verbs 54; Words of Respect 54, 94; Words of Humility 54, 94; in Auxiliary Verbs 94; use of tamō 102
Imperative form in Auxiliary Verbs 100
Imperative Sentences 184
Independent Words 17
Inflection 35, 41, 68
in Adjectives 35; in Verbs 41; in Auxiliary Verbs 68

Interjections 8, 156
before the Sentence 156; end of the Sentence 157; Pitch, Strength and Tone of 158
Interroogative Sentences 183

Modifiers 185, 186
Adjectival 186; Adverbial 185

Nondeclinable Parts of Speech 6, 7, 21, 168
Numerical Words 7, 21
Japanese Way of Counting 21, 22; Chinese Way of Counting 21, 22; use of shi, four 23, 24; use of hichi, seven 24; use of kyu, nine 25
Nouns 7, 9
Common 9; Proper 9; expressing Actions 9; expressing Conditions, Nature or Emotion 9; expressing Abstract Quality 9; original in Form and Nature 9; related to Verbs and Adjectives 10; with Verb-stem attached 10; with Verb-stem prefixed 11; formed by a combination of Nouns 11; followed by Adjectives 12; preceded by Adjectives 12; formed by combination of Adjectives 13; formed by combination of Adjectives and Verbs 13; formed by combination with Prefixes 14; formed by combination with Suffixes 14; Plural 14; derived from Foreign words 15

Omission of Parts in Sentences 173
Order of Component Parts of Sentences 172

Parts of Speech 7
Postpositions 6, 7, 103
Position of 103; Different uses of 104; use of ga 104; of no 107; of ni 109; of wo 112; of to 114; of e 115; of kara and made 117; of yori 117; of de 118; of ya 121; of dano 122; of wa 122; of mo, to, ya and ni 126; of demo 129; of sae 130; of koso 131; of dake 132; of bakari 133; of hoka and shika 134; of kiri 136; of kurai and gurai 136; of hodo 137; of yara 138; of ka 139; of nari 140; of ba 142; of tomo 144; of nara and mononara 144; of te 145; of shi 146; of tari and dari 147; of temo and demo 148; of kara and node 149
Predicate 3
Predicate-Part 168
Prefixes 14, 159
of Emphasis 160; of Clarity (uchi, sashi, tori, hiki, tachi and oshi) 160; adding some meaning 161; of Politeness (o, omi and go) 161; meaning without Ornament or Addition (su) 162; meaning without Artificiality (ki) 162; meaning Barrenness or Nakedness (ma) 162; meaning Empty (kara) 163; meaning False or Mischievous (sora) 163; meaning Incomplete or Short Intervals or Time (nama) 163; meaning Completeness or Perfection (maru) 163; meaning Little or Somewhat (ko) 163; meaning First (hatsu) 163; meaning Negation (fu or hu) 164
Pronouns 7, 16
Personal 16; First Person 16; Second Person 16; Third Person 17; Indefinite and Interrogative 17; use of Self 18; Demonstrative Pronouns indicating Distance 18; Plural form of 19; use of konata 19; use of ra 20

Row 42

Sentence 3, 177
Simple Sentence 177
Sonants 43

Subject 3
Subject-part 168
Suffixes 14, 159, 164
used with Nondeclinable Words 165; of Polite form (Sama and Kun) 165; of Plural form (ra, gata, tachi etc.) 165; used with Declinable Words 165; indicating Condition or Degree 165, 166; combined with other Words to form Declinalbe Words 166; meaning to appear or disire to do (garu) 166; meaning to assume a certain air (buru) 167; meaning, to resemble (jimiru) 167; meaning to appear to be (rashii) 167; meaning to have the quality of (gamashii) 167
Supplementary-part 169

Ten Parts of Speech 8

Verbs 7, 41
Inflection of 41; of Four Row Inflection 44; of One Row Inflection 45; of Upper One Row Inflection 45-6; of Lower One Row Inflection 47-8; of Irregular Inflection 48; Various Types of Inflection 50; Verbal Nouns 51; Transitive Verbs 55-6; Intransitive Verbs 55-6; Complete Intransitive Verbs 65, 66; Incomplete Intransitive Verbs 65, 66; Complete Transitive Verbs 64, 66; Incomplete Transitives Verbs 65;

Vertical Column 42

Words 5
Word-ends 42
Word-roots 42
Word-stem 42

GLOSSARY OF JAPANESE GRAMMATICAL TERMS

List below is limited to the Japanese Grammatical Terms appearing in this Book.

Bun 文 Sentence 3, 177

Bun no kōsei 文の構成 Construction of Sentences 168

Chūshō Shishi-Daimeishi 中稱指示代名詞 Demonstrative Pronouns of Medium Distance 18

Daimeishi 代名詞 Pronouns 7, 16

Dan 段 Horizontal Syllable Rows in the Table of Fifty Sounds 42

Daku-on 濁音 Sonants 43

Dōkakugo 同格語 Appositive 170

Dokuritsugo 獨立語 Independent Words 171

Dōshi 動詞 Verbs 7, 41

Dōshi teki Meishi 動詞的名詞 Verbal Nouns 51

Enshō Shishi-Daimeishi 遠稱指示代名詞 Demonstrative Pronouns of Long Distance 18

Fukanzen Jidōshi 不完全自動詞 Incomplete Intransitive Verbs 65, 66

Fukanzen Tadōshi 不完全他動詞 Incomplete Transitive Verbs 65, 66

Fukubun 複文 Compound Sentence 179

Fukushi 副詞 Adverbs 7, 153

Fukushi teki Shūshoku 副詞的修飾 Adverbial Modification 186

Fukushi teki Ku 副詞的句 Adverbial Phrase 155

Futeishō Shishi-Daimeishi 不定稱指示代名詞 Demonstrative Pronouns of Interrogation or Indefinite Distance 18

Futeishō Jin-Daimeishi 不定稱人代名詞 Indefinite Personal Pronouns 17

Futsū Jodōshi 普通助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Common Form 68

Genzai Jodōshi 現在助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Present Form 82, 83

Gimon-tai 疑問體 Interrogative Sentence 183

Gobi 語尾 Word-ends 42

Gokan 語幹 Word-stems 42

Gokon 語根 Word-root 42

Gyō 行 Vertical Column in the Table of Fifty Sounds 42

Henkaku Katsuyō 變格活用 Irregular Inflection of Verbs 48

Heijō-tai 平常體 Descriptive Sentence 183

Hinshi 品詞 Parts of Speech 7

Hitei Jodōshi 否定助動詞 Negative Auxiliary Verbs 68, 83

Hobu 補部 Supplementary Parts in Sentences 169

Ichi Dan Katsuyō 一段活用 One Row Inflection of Verbs 45

Jidōshi 自動詞 Intransitive Verbs 55-6

Jin-Daimeishi 人代名詞 Personal Pronouns 16

Jishō Jin-Daimeishi 自稱人代名詞 Personal Pronouns of the First Person 16

Jodōshi 助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs 6, 7, 67

Joji 助辭 Auxiliary Words 6, 7

Joshi 助詞 Postpositions 6, 7, 103

Jo-Sūshi 助數詞 Auxiliary Numerical Words 21

Jūbun 重文 Complex Sentence 182

Jū Hinshi 十品詞 Ten Parts of Speech 8

Jutsubu 述部 Predicate or Predicate-Parts 3, 168

Kako Jodōshi 過去助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Past Form 82-3

Kami Ichi-Dan Katsuyō 上一段活用 Upper One Row Inflection of Verbs 45

Kandō-tai 感動體 Exclamatory Sentence 184

Kanō Jodōshi 可能助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Possibility 72, 78

Kanshi 感詞 Interjections 8, 156

Kanzen Jidōshi 完全自動詞 Complete Intransitive Verbs 65, 66

Kanzen Tadōshi 完全他動詞 Complete Transitive Verbs 65, 66

Katsuyō 活用 Inflection 35, 41, 68

Keigo 敬語 Honorific Words 33, 54, 94, 174

Keijō no Jodōshi 敬讓の助動詞 Honorific Auxiiary Verbs 94

Keijō no Meirei Jodōshi 敬讓の命令助動詞 Honorific Imperative Auxiliary Verbs 101

Keishō 敬稱 Words of Respect 54, 94

Keiyōshi 形容詞 Adjectives 7, 35

Keiyōshi teki Shūshoku 形容詞的修飾 Adjectival Modification 185

Kenshō 謙稱 Words of Humility or Depreciation 54

Kibō Jodōshi 希望助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Hope 72, 76

Kinshō Shishi-Daimeishi 近稱指示代名詞 Demonstrative Pronouns indicating near-by things 18

Kōtei Jodōshi 肯定助動詞 Affirmative Auxiliary Verbs 62, 68

Kotoba 言葉 Words 5

Meirei-tai 命令體 Imperative Sentence 184

Meishi 名詞 Nouns 7, 9

Mirai Jodōshi 未來助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Future Form, 82, 83

Nigori-on 濁音 Sonants 43

Ombin 音便 Euphony 39, 51

Setsubigo 接尾語 Suffixes 14, 159, 164

Setsuzokushi 接續詞 Conjunctions 8, 150

Settōgo 接頭語 Prefixes 14, 159

Shieki Jodōshi 使役助動詞 Causative Auxiliary Verbs 69

Shieki no Ukemi Jodōshi 使役の受身助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Passive Causative Form 71

Shimo Ichi-Dan Katsuyō 下一段活用 Lower One Row Inflection of Verbs 45

Shinkō teki Keizoku Jodōshi 進行的繼續助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Continued Action 84

Shishi-Daimeishi 指示代名詞 Demonstrative Pronouns 16, 18

Shitei Jodōshi 指定助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Declaration 80

Shubu 主部 Subject or Subject-Part 3, 168

Sonzai teki Keizoku Jodōshi 存在的繼續助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Continued State 85

Sōshugo 總主語 General Master Words 170

Suiryō Jodōshi 推量助動詞 Suppositional Auxiliary Verbs 72

Sūshi 數詞 Numerical Words 7, 21

Tadōshi 他動詞 Transitive Verbs 55-6

Taigen 体言 Nondeclinable Parts of Speech 6, 7, 21, 168

Taishō Jin-Daimeishi 對稱人代名詞 Personal Pronouns of the Second Persoon 16

Tambun 單文 Simple Sentence 177

Tashō Jin-Daimeishi 他稱人代名詞 Personal Pronouns of the Third Person 17

Tenioha てにをは Postpositions 6, 7, 103

Toki no Jodōshi 時の助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Time 82

Toki no Kanryō Jodōshi 時の完了助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Perfect Tense 92

Toki no Keizoku Jodōshi 時の繼續助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Continuation

Ukemi Jodōshi 受身助動詞 Auxiliary Verbs of Passive Form 68

Yo Dan Katsuyō 四段活用 Four Row Inflection of Verbs 45

Yōgen 用言 Declinable Parts of Speech 6, 7, 31, 168

昭和十年七月廿日印刷
昭和十年七月廿五日發行
（不許複製）

著作者　松宮彌平

發行者　日語文化學校
代表者　松宮一也
東京市神田區美土代町七

印刷者　堀得次郎
東京市日本橋區小舟町一ノ二

印刷所　日米印刷社
東京市日本橋區小舟町一ノ二

發行所　日語文化學校
東京市神田區美土代町七

發賣所　教文館
東京市京橋區銀座四ノ二

定價　金參圓

Printed by
NICHI-BEI PRINTING CO.,
Tokyo, Japan.